

THE ~~15-5~~
Gentleman's Compleat Jockey:
 WITH THE
Perfect Horseman,
 AND
Experienc'd Farrier.
 CONTAINING,

- I. The Nature of Horses; their Breeding, Feeding, and Management in all Paces, to fit them for *War, Racing, Travel, Hunting*, or other Recreations and Advantages.
- II. The true Method, with proper Rules and Directions to *Order, Diet and Physick* the *Running-horse*, to bring him to any *Match*, or *Race*, with *Success*.
- III. The Methods to *Buy Horses*, and prevent being *Cheated*; Noting the particular Marks of the *Good and Bad Horses*, in all their Circumstances.
- IV. How to make *Blaies, Slips and Snips*: To *Fatten* a Horse with little Charge, and to make him Lively and Lovely.
- V. The whole Art of a *Farrier*, in curing all *Diseases, Griefs and Sorenesses* incident to Horses; with their *Symptoms and Causes*.
- VI. The Methods of *Shewing, Bleeding, Rawling, Purg-
ing*, and prevention of Diseases, and many other things, from long Experience and Approved Practice.

By A. S. GENT.

L O N D O N:

Printed for Henry Nelson, at the *Leg and Star*, over-
 against the *Royal Exchange* in *Cornhill*. 1696.



369 - 13

THE

P R E F A C E.

Reader,

I Here present you with a Labour'd Work, containing all that is Excellent to be known, relating to Horses and Mares, &c. the most necessary and useful Creature to Man, in Peace and War; Enriching with their Labours, and pleasing in their more nice Industry and Management; and consequently, their well-Breeding and Instructions, as to what they are capable, is necessary to be known; wherefore I have laid it down in such an easie, tho' perfect Method, that the meanest Capacity may soon understand it, and the largest, find Subject Matter enough to busie it self.

That these Creatures have been highly Esteemed in all Ages, and their Understanding very great, History makes frequent mention; So that their Preservation was had in much regard: And Hypocrates, and other Eminent Physicians, Studied it, next to Man's, Laying down Rules and Methods to discover and cure the Diseases incident to them. And this Example I have also follow'd, that so generous a Creature may at no time be left for want of suitable Remedies in any matter that may befall him;

The P R E F A C E.

him. The Station it has pleased God to put me in, has led me to Experience in this Creature; and I have found many things concerning them, to which, as far as I can perceive, the Ancients were Strangers: I have put them into a suitable Method, and Inserted them in this Book, besides what are taken from the Works of the most Expert Managers and Farriers that have ever been made Publick: So that I may without straining a point of Modesty, truly say, it not only Answers, but much exceeds what is promised in the Title Page, and is the best of its kind that has hitherto been abroad in the World. To prove this, I could insert many Particulars, but they being plainly to be seen in reading the following Pages; and Brevity (as I conceive) always most commendable in a Preface, I draw to a Conclusion;

As well knowing that when all that I can say, is said, I must leave it to the Censure of the Reader, and therefore will only desire one Favour, (which no reasonable Man will refuse) and, that it, not to pass Sentence before you Read and put in Practice so much of it as shall be suitable to your Occasion. And so not fearing its coming to the Touch stone, to prove its real Worth and Value, I remain, Reader,

Your Friend and Servant,
to Oblige you in what I may,

A. S.

THE
Gentleman's Compleat Jockey:
WITH THE
Perfect Horseman and Farrier.

Of the NATURE and PROPERTIES of HORSES.

HORSES, of all the unreasonable Creatures upon the Earth, are of the greatest Understanding, having in them (as the Learned affirm) a certain natural Instinct, not only of the knowledge of their Riders and Keepers, but also of their own Generation and Descent, knowing their Sires and Dams, in such a manner as they will refuse (as Pliny says) to couple, or engender with them. They are also Creatures the aptest to learn any Motion, and the readiest to obey their Teacher, having a greater love to Exercise than any other Beast. They are of an infinite great Courage, taking an exceeding delight in the Wars, and (as some do affirm) have a certain fore-knowledge of the Battel, and will prepare themselves for the same. They will mourn for the loss or deaths of their Masters; and are so apt to endure Labour, that it is written of the Horses of the Samarians, That they'll gallop a hundred Miles end-ways, without rest or stay; they are naturally long lived, and by choice Keepers have been brought up to fifty Years; but for thirty it hath been ordinary with them: the Mares are shorter liv'd, surviving till twenty or twenty five at the farthest. They are of all Beasts the most beautiful of shape. They are fit for the Saddle at four years of age, for the War at six, for the Race at eight, for Hunting, and extreme Matchs, at ten or eleven. The Females bear their

2 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Foal full eleven Months, and foal in the twelfth: the best time for their ingendering is *March*, at the increase of the Moon, or in part of it; the Mare foaleth standing; they are supposed to be so loving and kind to their Generation, that if a Foal lose the Dam, yet the other Mares, which are with milch, will of their own accord send their teats, to feed and nurse up the *Orphan-foal*. Horses are subject to more Diseases then any other Beast; some write three hundred, or as many as belong to Man.

The Means to make the Seed of the Horse perfect for Generation.

The Seed of the Horse ought to be hot and dry, so that all excessive moisture of Seed must be abated and taken away: Now the means to make hot and dry Seed for Generation, is Labour and spare Diet, the digestion being made perfect, through heat proceeding from Labour, so that the meat that the Horse and Mare should feed upon, should be in quality of Nature hot and dry, and then moderately taken: The Seed doth naturally pervale of the quality and temperature of the meat; his meat will increase an uniform Seed, so that the Colt will be like unto the Sire: The meat should be old sweet Hay or Wheat-straw, moderately given them; sweet Oats, winnow'd and clean'd from the dust and filth, mingled with old dry'd Pease or Beans, with a scattering of Bay-salt and Anniseeds; the Provender for their better digestion may be given them three times a day; their Water sweet and pure; and every day early in the morning, when they are fasting, moderately exercised until they sweat, their Stable clean'd, and then painfully dressed and rubbed dry, and thorough cold before any meat be given to them; the which doth not only perfect digestion, and exhaust the moisture from the Seed, but also strengtheneth and cleanseth their blood and bodies from all raw and imperfect humours, whereby you shall perceive them to exceed in pride and lust. About eight or ten days before they come to action, add to their diet some sweet Wheat, equal in mixture and quantity with the rest of their provender; for Wheat is a great comforter of the Heart, and an

increaser of the vital-spirits, which above all things for that action is principally to be moved and stirred up; sometimes put in a pint of White-wine, or a potle of Ale, to abate the cold quality of their Water. These Means being rightly used, you shall plainly discern the endowment of a good temperature, to posses a sufficient power to shape a perfect body; which no one of the Gentry would give any rate for.

Observations for the better Directions in Breeding of the Mare.

There must be a great discretion used in feeding of the Mare, until she have foaled, least by the long use of over-bad Meats, the Colt in the Womb be impaired from that quality and temperature it had from the Seed; therefore the Mare may not so far eat of contrary Meats, least the Colt lose of those good qualities, which it received (as hath been said) of the Seed wherof it was made.

Of what Age the Horse or Mare ought to be that Begot and Bring forth.

Observe every Horse until he be six Years old is a Colt, but never after, and that is his first Age, and if after that time he lose any of his Teeth they come not again, because the excess of his Moisture doth then begin to abate, being until then predominate in Moisture; and from five Years of Age until he be ten, is counted his middle, youthful and perfect Age, for his vigor, spirit and action, because he is then more Hot and less Moist; and from ten Years of Age to fifteen is his declining, because then Heat and Moisture do much decay; and from fifteen Years of Age until twenty his old Age, because then he is cold and dry. The best time for their Ingendring is March, at the increase of the Moon, or in part of it; the Mare carrieth (as hath been said) her Foal eleven Months and foaleth standing in the twelfth.

To know whether a Mare hath conceiv'd, and how to order her after time of Conception, until the time of Foaling. For the better Breeding and Nourishment of the Colt.

If she cast not her Seed, but eateth freash: when she cometh to Meate, and so continueth, and doth not urineth nor piss often, neither casteth her eye gazing after a Horse, and within a Day or two beginneth to be gaunt and led, because her Womb in Conception and closing will together in keeping the Seed, trusseth up and maketh it show less to the sight then before, as if she were suddenly become lean, and her Hair lyeth very smooth, and brighter then before; as also about ten Days after, offereth her a Horse two or three Days before the Full, and likewise before the New Moon, (and she abhorreth Copulation) it offereth that her Nature is satisfi'd, and are manifest Signs of her Conception. And as touching her Keeding, let her not drink so much as Nature desireth, and still keep her with the same Meate and Dyt for twelve Days after: Presently after her Foaling milk the Mare as clean as you can, which will not only draw down her Milk, but make the same easie, and also keep the Udder in a good temper, that the Milk do not clod, which if it should, the Mare will quickly become dry. Boil her Milk with the tops of Lavender by the air her Udder therewith, and so continue till the clods and knobs in the Udder be dissolved. After foaling give her a good Mash made of Malt, or Wheat meal; let the Stable be open and airy, and the Floor paved and not plancked; in the Provender you may also put the Powder of Grimstone, the Powder of the Roots of *Enda Campana*, or White-lilly-roots, of *Pelipodium* of the Oak, of Saven, Marsh-wormwood, Tobacco, Garlick chopt small, and such like, and when she goes to Graze, let her run no longer then Easter-tide.

Of Taming of Colts.

The yearly wintering Colts in the Stable, will make them tame and domestical, as also bring many other benefits both

both to the Owner and the Colts, until they come to be ridden, which should not be until five Years of Age, if you would have them strong, sound and durable Colts. When the Colt is made gentle to suffer the saddle and crupper to be set on his back, shooes on his feet, and also lead to water; then take another gentle Horse, and ride upon him leading the Colt in a halter; cross gird your Colt, and ride him a mile or two, and make much of the Colt, and with this gentle usage the Colt will love and desire your Company, and oftentimes when you are in the Stable with him, cause some Drum to beat, or Gun to play or shooe to harden him, at which time stand by and cherish him.

Of making of Colts to Amble, from the time of their Fealing.

Put on a halter, bridle and saddle, at your pleasure, on the Mare's head, in the morning lead her forth, let the Colt follow her gently, as fast a pace as she can go, into some even, plain, and hard Ground, and be sure that the Colt be not inforced to go faster then you lead the Mare; then observe and you shall find the Colt going by her, that he doth altogether go and strain his Legs in an Amble, after you have practised several times, the Colt will increase in the swiftness of the pace of his Amble, and then when you think fit, you may Back him.

Of the Stable.

First, For the situation of the Stable, it should be on a dry Ground, so as all the season of the Year, both Man and Horse may come and return from the same clean and dry; also it should be builded and so placed that there be a continual Current for cleansing and keeping the same sweet from all things that are noysome. It should be cealed over the Horse's, to keep both Horse, Rack, Meat and Manger from a dust; it must not have any filthy Gutter or Sink near, in, or under the same, neither any Privy, nor any other unwholesome favour of Hogsties, Hen-houses, or such like. Some antient Writers affirm, that the strong air of a Privy will make a Horse blid; the Horse is natural-

6 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

ly a proud Beast, and delighteth in cleanness; the Rack should be set high and stooping, that no dust or filth may annoy the Horse's Eyes or Maine, or indanger his Crest, by crooked or wry feeding; the Manger shou'd be deep and strong, for casting Provender out of it with the Horse's Nose, with posts and partitions, as you may see in all well-ordered Stables; the Floor should be paved and not plank'd for these Reasons: First, it is more durable and lasting, and lesse charge, it maketh your Horse more bold upon stony and hard Grounds, as also it is an excellent conveniency for Colts being unshoed, for it hardeneth the Hoof, so as by continuall and custom, they will be as bold on the Stones as if they were shod. The Pavement should be even, n't higher before, where the fore-feet stand, for it will prove painful to the hinder Legs, so as the Horse unless necessity compell him, cannot stand strait or be bold in the Stable; there should be divers Windows, the which should be so placed, that the Stable be therewith cleared with the Air, and to be close shut, or opened as occasion shall serve, in the night time especially in the Winter, at other times it should be kept something cold, for the Horse will feed and digest the better. There should not be any dust or Loam-walls about or near the Rack or Manger, for the Horse will naturally lick them to his great hurt. The Dung must not by any means lye close to the Stable. The Groomes should be lodged near to the Stable to be ready at all times, and upon all occasions; and joyning to their Lodging should be a convenient Room with a Press therein to set their Saddles, Bridles, Girts, and such like; with all kind of necessary Instruments, to mend such Furniture, with all things necessary for Shoeing, Letting of Blood, and such like, together with medicinable things, either for inward Diseases, or outward Hurts. There should also to the Stable be annexed certain Sheds or Rooms to lay Horse-litter in, both new and old, for it is most unfit for the Litter to be under the Manger, as commonly is used, lest the Horse should either feed on it, or be offended with the favour. Besides there should be a little inclosed Room, such as Horses after their labour might be put into, to wallow themselves, wherein most Horses take exceeding delight,

it

it being also most healthful for them so do, the which the ancient Writers affirm, doth so much comfort a Horse, that if they be tyed, having afterwards wollowed himself, being clean rubed, will courageously travell presently again, there shoulde also be Places or Sheds for the Horses to be cleansed, curried, and trimmed in, neither would I have any Horse having the Glaundre, or any other Sicknes, Hurt or Disease, to remain in the Stable at such a time, but kept in a Shed for the present from the rest of the Horses, by which means, and all other good Dyer, there cannot be any great doubt of Health and long Life to the Horses.

Of Shoeing of Horses.

If the true knowledge of Hoofs were rightly understood, then shoeing could not be difficult: First, I will set down what is a perfect Hoof, it must be lean, smooth, deep, tough, narrow towards the Toe, and conveniently broad in the Heels, much like an Asses Hoof, for it should be round. A Hoof that wants the deepnes of the Coffin cannot be of long service; and because all the weight of the Horse resteth upon the Quarters and Heels of the Forefeet, therefore those Quarters, I mean the edge of the Coffin on the hinder part of the Forefeet must be maintained and taken off as little as may be, for thereby the Horse treadeth and beareth equally, which is a special means to keep him from interfering behind. Therefore the Farrier must to his uttermost preserve the hinder Quarters of the Forefeet, taking little or nothing away from the edge of the Coffin, because, as we said, all the weight and burthen of the Horse resteth upon the Quarters and Heel of the Forefeet, which few Farriers little think upon; but the Toes of the Forefeet being naturally thick and hard, must by them be always abated and pared thin as the edge of a knife, whereby they make the Hoofs of the Forefeet to be low before, and high in the Quarters. Therefore when they do pare the Coffin of the Forefeet, let them do it so even and plain as the Eye can discern, that the Shoe Laid upon the Coffin may seem to be glewed thereunto, for that you cannot see the light betwixt the

8 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

the Shoe and the Coffin in any part otherwise the Shoe is not well turned or welded, or the Hoof truly pared, but before it be nailed, be sure to amend the fault; so that it may bear even and just upon the edge of all the Coffin; then before you let the Farrier set on the Shoe, in both the quarters of the Coffin of every Foot next to the Frush, let him cut out of the end of the corner of the Coffin, as near to the quick of the Heel as may be, as much of the Coffin as you may lay your Finger in it, whereby it shall never gather to near the Frush, to close up, and become narrow in the Heels, so as when the Horse is shoo'd, you shall have a very good distance betwixt the broad end of the Frush, and the sponge of the Shoe, whereby all Gravel and Stones will with and work out of the sponge of the Shoe, being cut aslope; then when the Shoe is tacked on with nails, set down the Horse's Foot, and stand directly behind the Horse, and view whether the Frush of the Foot be direct and of just proportion, even betwixt the Webs of the Shoes, and whether the Horse stand right, and the Frush equally betwixt the Webs or Sponges of the Shoe, and you shall be assured thereby that the Shoe standeth right, the continual use whereof will cause the Horse to tread and traverse boldly and surely, because his Quarters being the bearing place, will be broad and even to support the whole Body. And for the true making of the Shoe, all the Web should be strait and plain, not drawn in at the Heels and Quarter narrow, or beaten to the Heels which many use to do, neither hollowed, if the Feet be perfect but even and flat, with a broad Web, and the Sponges thicker and more substantial than any part of the Shoe, to cause the Joyn to stand upright, and so wide in the Quarters, as that it may disord the coffin of the Hoof the breadth of a Straw, to guard and save the Coffin of the Hoof, being the only strength of the whole Foot, and also the Shoe so far set back to guard the Heels, as may save the same from bruising and cutting with Stones, and unless the Coffin be continually so kept open from hard oppressing, and closing of the Tiel of the Foot, which is inclosed within the Coffin, whereby the Tiel becometh bound to the great gripe and lameness of the

the Horse, but the Foot and Joyns of the Horse maintained as a principal post to support the whole Building, for otherwise the Horse will become Hoof-bound, which many ignorantly call dry sound ed, and also make the Joyns to become weak, lame, and full of Windgalls. And therefore when he comes to the piercing of the Shoe of the Fore-foot, let him not spare to pierce it from the Quarter to the ha d Toe, but not backward to the Heel, and let the Shoe be so pierced, as the holes be much wider on the outside of the Shoe then within, for the holes of the inside of the Shoe should be no wider then the Shank of the Nail may well fit, otherwise the Shoe will never fit fast and steady, and the circle of the piercing more distant from the edge o'th' toe, then from the edge of the Quarter, because every Smith knoweth that there is more hold to be taken with less danger, in respect of the Tuel and Quick of the Foot, and all the Nails would be untoled without Shoulders, which will so sink, and strongly fill the Hole, as that the Shoe will be well fixed, and by cutting the Hoof a little with the point of a Knife, let the Clinch be clean hid, the which shooing should always be done, eight or ten Days before you travel your Horse, for by that time the Hoof will be grown to the Nails, to hold the Shoe fast. And for the helping of interseing, you must keep him full of Flesh, and always preserve the Coffins on the inside of the Hoof, without paring away more then to make them even for the Shoes, and abare the outside of the Coffin of the same Foot, and besides, make the Sponges of the Shoes on the inside of the Shoes much thicker then the outside.

How to know a Horse that is durable, and of continuance in Journey, &c.

This observation must also be from his shape, the others follow: First, It is to be considered that Strength is the cause of the continuance of Travel, then to consider in what part of the Body of the Horse that Strength principally and naturally refleth, for as the Strength of the Bull is naturally in the neck, of the Lyon and Bear in the paws, of the Dog

10. The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

In the chops, so of the Horse in the fore-part, where Nature hath impos'd the Burthen, and there is and must be his principal force and strength, the which fore-part must be deep and broad, from the point of his top, or withers, to the bottom of his chest or breast; his ribs bearing out as the lid or cover of a trunck, whereby he will appear broad, full, round, and bearing out in the chest or breast, with an evennes of chest and belly to the flank, so as that his belly hung not deeper then his chest, nor his chest deeper then his belly, with lean, upright, and strait postures, somewhat narrow hoofed towards the toe, assure yourselves such a Horse will be durable, and as good almost at the end of his Labour as at the beginning; if he be of a contrary shape, then will his actions be contrary, namely, the longer he is travell'd, the more Jade.

How to know a free and perfect Spirited Horse.

This powerful spirit, proceeds from the vital spirit and arterial blood, that goes wandering through the whole body, to stir up the power of the Beast, to give him force and vigour to work; and as this spirit is of substance most pure, so when it is plentifully infused it maketh and worketh all the Creature, and quality of the same pure, so as Man not knowing or finding the reason, cannot but wonder at the work and Workmaster. Wherefore for the satisfaction on and confirmation of this proposition, how to know a perfect, quick, and free-spirited Horse, you must also still retain all the description of shape before described, by all which descriptions you shall assuredly know his qualities, only upon the view, as if you had made tryal of him many years; but if the Horse be defective in his shape, as I have described, then assure yourself that he wanteth that natural perfection I have referred the rule unto. Observe then, I beseech you, that a perfect Horse by Nature is thus shaped, viz. a lean slender head, broad fore-head, great black eyes, fall and p'ain over the lids, slender, thin, and lean jaws, broad, thin, long, and a high reared neck, the head set to the neck as naturally as a Ram's head when he fighteth, high withers, and a deep broad chest or breast, his ribs of an equal

equal evenness from his chest to his flank, lean, upright pasterns, with a lean and deep hoof; such a Horse, assure thyself, will be found in all his actions naturally bold, loving, easie, sure-footed, durable, and free-going. But because I know and do assure myself, that *amus Mense et capax: anti Mite*, that it is unpossible that one head should be so well furnished as to neglect the opinions of the anti-ent Writers, I have therefore annexed their Description, humbly submitting myself to the censure of the Experienced and Learned.

Of the Shape of a Horse.

The last thing to know a good Horse is his Shape, which originally made by God, was no doubt most excellent, for the Works of God were all perfect. The particular Observations and Descriptions of the perfect shape of a Horse are in number 32, against which I question not but that there may be Objections raised, which I will not trouble my self to answer, as being conscious that what I shall write of this Subject I have partly by experience, and partly received from the most approved Authors. I will begin with the Hoof, and so ascend till the whole Body be described:

First therefore, they say, That the Hoof should be black, smooth, dry, large, round and hollow: Some write, That if it be soft and tender, and the Heel broad, that is a sign of lightness, and that the Mare will from her Foaling, tread light upon the ground, being afraid to trust her Hoofs being tender, and therefore straineth her Legs and Back the more.

2d Rule is, That the Hoofs should be small and heavy answerable to the Joyns, that it should be hairy, his Peterlock to be good, in that it also answereth his nature.

3. That his Pasterns should be short, neither too low nor too high, and therewithal strong beneath, not apt to founder, the strength of the Pastern being the uprightness thereof.

12. The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

4. That his Joyns ought to be great, with long Fetter-locks behind, this greatness of his Joyns must also be answerable to the proportion of his Body.
5. That his Legs ought to be strait and broad.
6. That his Knees should be great, lean and plain.
7. That his Thighs should be full of Sinews, the Bones whereof to be short, equal, just well proportion'd; that when he standeth with his Legs together, they should be more distant one from another toward the Breast then beneath, which proceeds from the fulness and breadth of the Breast, which causeth that distance.
8. That his Shoulders should be long, large, and full of such proportionable to his Body.
9. That his Breast should be large and round.
10. That his Neck should be rather long then short, great towards the Breast, bending in the midst, and slender towards the Head.
11. That his Ears should be small, sharp, and upright.
12. That his Forehead should be lean and large, that largeness to be both of breadth and length, according to his natural proportion.
13. That his Eyes should be near and black.
14. That the hollownes of his Erows be well filled and shooting outward.
15. That his Jaws should be slender and lean.
16. That his Nofir is should be open, and puffed up that you may see the red within apt for Air.
17. That he ought to have a great Mouth.
18. And which is strange, that his Head should be like a Sheep's-head: I answer, That Sheep's-heads being as other Beasts, are of divers Shapes, it cannot be directly answered, for if I should conceive the shape thereof contrary to the Writers meaning, I should wrong them, and therefore leave it, having already given my description as to my own knowledge, but if you take it according to the proportion of most Sheep, it is a good Shape.
19. That the Main should be thin and long, which he oxeneth straights, and the thinnes aptnes to be sought.

20. That his Withers and Walleyes should be sharp pointed, right and strait, so that a Man may see from thence the Posture of his Shoulders.
21. That his Back should be short, even and plain.
22. That his Sides should be long and large, with small space betwixt the hinder Rib and the Huckle-bone.
23. That his Belly should be long and great, orderly hidde[n] under his Ribs.
24. That his Flank should be full and not gaunt, with natural friz'd hair on both sides, and the higher such hair mount the better.
25. That his Rump should be round and plain, with a large space betwixt the Huckle-bones.
26. That his Thighs should be large and long, with bones well proportioned and full of flesh.
27. That his Hams should be lean, dry and strait.
28. That his Hoofs should be large and crooked like a Hart, which should be a sign of soundnes.
29. That his Tail be full of hairs, long, down to the ground, or as some write, lean and crisp.
30. That his Tunchcon should be of a measurable bigness and well couched.
31. That his Stones and Yard should be small.
32. That he be proportioned like a Sag, lower before then behind.

Of the Colours of Horses.

Now we proceed to the examination of the certainty of the know'dge that might be taken from the Horse's colour, which most Men do so embrace, my purpose is to name those which they call the best, viz. brown, bay, dappled, black full of silver hairs, black like the Moor; the roan, bri he bay, dark bay, bright sorrel, flea-bitten, whitely yard, &c. The ancient Writers tell us that every Horse is coloured as he is complexion'd, and according to the complexion he is good or evil dispositioned, as he doth partake of the Elements so he is complexion'd; affirming that if he have most of the Element of Fire, then he is choleric, and theref're light, hot and fiery, and of no great force, as the bright sorrel; but if of the Element of Water, then dull.

14. The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

dull, slow, heavy, cold of Nature, and such are most commonly milk white; but if of the Element of the Air, then more full of blood, sanguine, pleasant, and of colour bay; but if of the Earth, then melancholy, faint-hearted, fat and heavy; the colour of these are dark, dun, russet or black. The Learned say, there are four Complexions, as there are four Elements; but Horses do almost yearly alter their colours, the Mare at the time of her foaling; Opius says that the colours of Horses were chosen and maintained for the hunting of wild Beasts; if a Horse be of a brown bay, which the Frenchmen do call *Bosarie*, loyal trusty *Baward*, which they account to be the Captain of all colours, if within this brown bay have a white star, white foot, and such like, he is valued oftentimes more then he is thrice worth. Thus hath many Ages taken that for a cause which is no cause.

Of the Horse Marks.

The Italian Writers have drawn particular Names, from whom the People borrow their Opinions, and therefore when a Horse hath a white-foot or a white-mark, which the Italian calls *Balgari*, if the white extend high and large (they say) it presendeth debility, because whiteness betokeneth weakness, dulness, and the like, and that they call *Balgari*, they tell us of *Calzati*, *Arerli*, *Travati*, *Trafficatori*, *Rapicari*, *Attavato*, *Gazzo*, *Zaini*, &c. and sure I am that neither with foot, white star, white list, stroke, snip, phillet in the forehead, white lump, black and red fleabiting, ostrich-feather, where it cannot be seen, meal-nose, meal-flank, bearded under his chops like a Gnat, black and long fetterlocks, long muis, black tail, black list, and such like, are not to be depended on as the assurance of a good Horse, for undoubtly you shall find good and bad of all colours, but to overcome Custom, is a hard fight.

How to know a Horse that is bold by Nature.

A Horse that is fearful by Nature may, by compellatory means, after long use make little or no shew of fear, as be-
ing

ing in a Ship upon the Sea, where are trumpets, guns, and the like, not having means to avoid the sun, by use and continuance thereof, seemeth not fearful. But the physiognomy of a Horse is much more certain, for he cannot keep secret or conceal as Man can, but being in perfect health remaineth ever one and the same in countenance. To conclude and make the truth hereof appear, choose a Horse with a broad forehead, a great black full eye standing out like a Hare's, and a high rear'd forepart, and be assured that by Nature he is bold, and to give you a farther assurance, mark a Horse with a narrow forehead, hale eyes and a low forepart, which is meer contrary, and assure yourself by Nature, that he is starting and fearful, and to seal up the truth thereof, the tryal will confirm you.

How to make a white Scar or white Spot in a Horse's Face, or in any other place.

Take two or three Apples, the softest you can get, and scald them at a quick fire, then being extremem hot, take one of them in a cloath, and having cut off the skin, clap the hot Apple to the Horse's forehead, and hold it hard thereunto till the heat be abrogated, then try if the hair will come off, which if it will not, then take another hot Apple, and do as you did before; then when the hair is come off, as broad as you would have it, then take another hot Apple, and clap it to the scalded skin, holding it hard to, till all the skin blister and come off as well as the hair; then anoint the fore place twice a day with Honey, and the next hair which cometh will be white.

To keep your Woollen Huds-cloaths, Breast-cloaths, Rabbits, and the like from Moths.

When you turn your Horse or Horses to graff, take all your Woollen Cloaths, of what kind soever, and first wash them clean and dry them, then hang them in the Sun, dust them, and brush them, then lay them on some Fleaks or some other open thing, a pretty distance from the ground, and spread all open; then take the hoofs of

Horses

16 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Horses and Catts, and chopping them in pieces, burn them under the Woollen thinss, so as the smoke may come into the n in every part; then, being thoroly smok'd, fold them up hanhookly, and between every fold strow the powder of Waln' tree-leaves well dried, and so lay them up in a Chest, and you shall never be troubled with M'ths, which are very unwholsome for the Horse, and un-become to him. Others use to rub their Chayls on the wrong sides all over with the tops and tender parts of Wormwood, whi h hath the same effect.

How to defend a Horse from Flies.

This is a noisome Offense in the Summer-time; therefore when you find the troubl'e there-of, take Arise-smart, and keep it in running Water, and make it exceeding strong of the Her's, and therewith sprinkle and wash the Horse all over, and no Fly will touch him a second time. The Ivy, Rue or Herb of Grace will do the like.

Observation in the Electing of Horses, and the like.

That which giveth the noblest Charakter to a good Horseman, is, the well choying of Horses for that use and purpose he in ends to employ them; and in this Device there is no better nor readier a way than the knowledge of Races and Strains from whence the Horses descend; for (as I have already in intated) it is certain, that the Climate, Heat, and Cold, are the three excellent Elements in a Horse's Composition. As to the election of Horses by their sh.apes and proportion, by their colour and compleions, and by their marks and other outward semblances, I have already written sufficiently, and intend to iterate no hing. To come then to the election of the Horse, according to their Races, Breeds, and Climates; if you will elect a Horse for service, of martial and warlike Employments, then these are best: the *Neapolitan*, the *Sardinian*, the *Almain*, the *French*, or any of these bastardiz'd in themselves, or with fair well-shap'd and well-metalld *English* Mares. If you will choy for Swiftness and Service, then

the

the Arabian, the Barbary, the Spanish, the Grecian, or any of their barded in the selves, or without our best English Mares. If you will chuse for long Travel and service, then the English, the Hungar, the Swedland, the Poland, the Lish. If you chuse for Drangk or service, the Flanders, the F. F. Land, or any of the Netheland, either barded in the selves, or without English faces; and these are excellent for Coach, for Cart, for Jack, or for any Barren.

I shall end this Discourse of Horses of several Countries with a general Observation I have entertain'd of the Properties of Horses: A Horse hath two Properties of a Man; the first is, to have a proud Head; and the second is, to be bold and hardy. He hath two Properties of a Badger, the first is, to have a white rafe or ball in his Forehead; the second is, to have a white Post. He hath four Properties of a Lyon, the first is, to have a broad Breast; the second, to be stiff-necked; the third, to be wild in the Countenance; the fourth is, to have four good Legs. He hath nine Properties of an Ox; the first is, to be broad Ribb'd; the second is, to be low-brown'd; the third is, to be short-paister'd; the fourth is, to have great Sinews; the fifth is, to be wide betwixt the Challet; the sixth is, to have great Nostrils; the seventh is, to be big on the Chine; the eighth is, to be fat and well fed; the ninth is, to be upright standing. He also hath nine Properties of a Hare; the first is, stiff-car'd; the second, to be green-tay'd; the third, the Eyes round; the fourth, to have a Lam Head; the fifth, to have lean Knees; the sixth, to be light of foot; the seventh, to run upon alight ground; the eighth, to have stony Barrock's; the ninth, to have two good Feet. He hath nine Properties of a Fox; the first is, to be prack car'd; the second, to be little-eared; the third, to be round-faced; the fourth, to be side-tail'd; the fifth, to be short leg'd; the sixth, to be black-leg'd; the seventh, to be short trotting; the eighth, to be well colur'd; the ninth, to have a hale Head. He hath nine Properties of an Ais; the first is, to be small mouth'd; the second, to be long-reined; the third, to be thin-crooked; the fourth, to be straight-hoc'd; the fifth, to have

18. The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

have small Stones; the sixth, to be Lash-leg'd; the seventh, to be round footed; the eighth, to be hollow footed; the ninth, to have a rough Hair. He borrows ten Properties of a Woman: the first is, to be light-hued, and of a merry cheer; the second is, to be well paced; the third is, to have a broad Foreh; the fourth is, to have well-sized Buttocks; the fifth, to be hard of Ward; the sixth, to be always busy with the Mouth; the seventh, to be chewing of the Bridle; the eighth, to be good at a Long Journey; the ninth, to be easie to leap upon; the tenth, to be stirring under a Man.

My Reader may perceive, that I descend to these familiar instances, the better to inculcate the steps of a perfect Horse into his Mind, without which there can be no good nor safe Election, let the Horse be of an Country whatsoever.

To fatten a lean Horse in a short time.

Take him from Grass and Soil, bring him into the Stable, curry and rub him, so as to loosen the Skin, and chafe it with Neatsfoot-oyle; give him three quins a day, for a week, Mashes made of boiled Oats, Beans, and Lizen, to a good quantity; after this, for a week, make up Balls of Farly-meal, Honey, Eatalcampane beaten into powder, the Juice of sweet Fennel and Cummin-seeds; make these up into Balls with new Ale, and give him three of them a day as big as Pullett eggs for a week, and after each ball a peck of Oats and two quarts of split Beans. This done, give him only Oats and Hay; and in a month, make him very old, he will be in extraordinary good case.

A certain way to know the Age of a Horse by his Tail, E, c., Eyebrow, Hair, &c.

A Horse's full number of Teeth are accounted Thirty four, tho' there are some few that never arrive to that number, having only Thirty, or Thirty one; and the times they come are these: A yearling Colt has 18 on either

ther side above and below, and at three years old, ten in the same manner; and half a year after, those that are ill shaped, call'd *Dig-Timb*, drop out; and between that and six years, others spring up in their room; and at full six they have as many as they will have, the great *Cheek-Teeth* and *Eve-Teeth*, to that space, falling out and receiving others in their stead, being altogether hollow.

These perfected black Marks or Specks appear in the fore Teeth, and continue till eight; at twelve the sides of his Teeth turn black, and so grow longer as his years encrave, except he feeds upon very hard Meats, and be strong Jaw'd, to wear or keep them at a flay; and after twelve his Age is not to be found in his Mouth.

Then observe his Temples, to be fainted in it, which are less or more crooked and hollow, as he encraves in years.

The next is his Hoof, which is feamed one over another; and if upon parting off a piece of the Hoof you find it brittle, dry and crusty, it denotes great Age.

His Tail likewise denotes his Age; feel it with your finger and Thumb, close to the skin; or, and if the Joint be knobby, and sticking out more than in other parts of it, to the bigness of a small Bird's-egg, he exceeds not Two Years.

His Eyes standing out, full, round, and sparkling, not sinking in the pits, appearing even with his Temples, and not wrinkled, and none appearing in his Eyebrows, then he is a young Horse; but the contrary denotes him old.

If his Skin come up easie and fall smooth when it goes, he denotes him young; but if he be of a dark colour, and the Hair of his Eyebrows turn grey or grizzled, or if he be under, it betokens Age: Or if a white Horse have a black or red Mamel over his Body, it signifies the same.

If the Ears of his Mouth be large and deep, rough in handling, then he is aged; but if the contrary, then young and fit for Service.

Another general Rule necessary to be known by the Horseman and Farrier, from warrantable Experience.

A Mare's best breeding-time for a race of good Horses, between three and ten years, and in suffering her sooner

20 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

to take the mare, she will produce weak and sickly Colts, or such dull ones as are not worth rearing. Put your stallions to her in due warm Paffure, and feed them well; let great care be taken of the Mare when she has conceiv'd, often bled, and fed with warm Maltus. The stallion ca. let not to exceed her in age above a year, to be firm lim'd, strongly checked and cur'd, free as possible from Distastes and Scrotumes: Ride the Mare sometimes but gently till she has quaken'd, and the Colt be come to some perfection; house her in rainy, damp, and cold weather; let her never be easie, and cherish her with dry Malt, scattering in a few Groat-wine-seeds.

For gelding Colts, the Spring and Fall are the best times, the Weather being open and warm; do this in the wain of the Moone, the Signs being either in *Aries* or *Virgo*. Some geld them at nine days; but I hold it much better at half a years end, then they will be more strong, lively, and masculine. Wean them at a year, or sooner, if you find your Mare sickly or deficient in Milk; then put them out of the bearing of their Dams, that they may the sooner forget her, and not pine after her; but after he is seven months old, let him not have his fill of suck, above once in two days: Feed him with Pollard, boiled Barly, and put him in short sweet Paffure very dry.

Back him not till three years old, lest you make him weak in the Limb or stay-back'd, besides, it hinders his growth, and generally renders him lame in his Limbs, tho' you may make him familiar with you, that when you come to do it, it may be done with little trouble: And then consider for what exercise he is best proportion'd, and to that chieflly adapt him. In managing him to his Pace, and other Exercises, and in all, it is requisite he should have a good Mouth, not forey, and lie smoothly, his leg up his Leg, in trotting neither too high nor too low; that he gallop strongly, be ianuation fitt, and rid ground space.

Directions for the better Ordering a Horse designed for Exercise, as, Trotting, Travelling, &c.

In these cases, the day and night before the day you

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 21

learned to set out, give him a due proportion of Provis-
der, litter him very well, and let him be clean rubbed
down; lead him not abroad, but give him warm Water
in the Stables, rub and chafe into his Joints Neats-fond
Oil, Trotter-oil, Dogg-graske: In the morning let him
have Oats and Beans, but no Hay: if he be break and
shred, Water him not before you ride him out of the
Stable, then ride him a mile or two a working pace, and
when well heated, ride an Amble, Trot, or other Pace, at
your discretion; and coming into your Barn or Stable,
let tape off the Sweat before you rub him down: This Route
may be made of a piece of a Scythier or a thin Scord: then
give him a proportionable allowance of Turnaller, some-
what more than usual.

If he be any thing hot, give him warm Water, other-
wise cold Water will do as well; and bringing him home,
litter the like measure; put on his Cloth, and tuck dry
Wicks between his Guts and Body; let him stand in the
Bridle about two hours, then take a Knop of Hay into the
Barn, and soon after give him about two quarts of Oats
and 12 Beans, among which scatter a little Hempseed well
cleaned, and when he comes to the Lift Barn, give him
warm Water and Oatmeal; light up his litter, and let him
take his rest: And thus ordering, if he be not a defective
Horse, he will perform what you put him to, to your con-
sult.

Opinions as to Saddling and Bridling; a Horse, much agitated.

If the Horse be wild and shrikish, impatient of the Saddle and Trench, and when they are once'd to make him familiar with the sight of them, always hang them near him in the Stable: Oder it till you see some willingness in him to accept it; give the Saddle on gently, and put wicks between his Body and the Guts; put no air can. Bridle first, and so a harder by degrees; in a fair day carry him to plain ground, turn him round you, and sometimes che-
erish him with your Voice, strike him a little with your
Wand, and lay your weight on the Saddle with no mount-
ing, shake and strike the Stirrups against his sides, and do
all

22 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

all such other things as may usually happen in riding; by this means you will become familiar with him, and he with you: Then take off the flight and easie Bridle you first try, and gird the Saddle hard; wash his Mouth with Ale and Treacle, and put into it a full-mouth'd Trench Bit, so drawing the Reins over his Head, lay them on the Saddle, give them now and then a gentle pull, that he may feel it, and champ on it; fasten then Martingals from the Chaulbands to the Girths, yet with some slackness, unless he is apt to flant and roll up his Head, then fasten a broad piece of Leather about his Neck, at his Withers, and before the middle of his Windpipe about six inches beneath his Throale, between which and his Neck draw the Martingals, to prevent his ducking down his Head; and this will make him carry his Neck Archwise, like a Swan, and add much to his comeliness. And thus use him nine or ten days before you actually attempt to back him.

The best Method for Backing a Horse.

Having made your Horse patient of the Saddle and Trench, carry him a road, then make many offers to mount, by putting your Foot in the Stirrup, at length leap on his Back, fit fast, and keep your Legs close to his sides, give him a little head, and draw him on to ploughed Ground, where let him run till he sweat, then breathe him again, then chaff him; shake your Legs and Stirrups, keep his Head straight, and his Neck Archwise, yet venture not to ride him far before he is familiar; after this feed him with Bread or Gras, if he will take it out of your Hand! Having this done two or three Mornings or Evenings, try by the Trench, Cavesson and Martingals; let another ride over before you, on a well-managed horse, who then goes or falls, as you see him disposed, judge him a good and fit other Horse, but not before him to be well acquainted with his Barten.

THE
Compleat Horseman:
 OR, TRUE
 Art of Horsemanship,
 In all its
 Parts and Perfections ;
 Under sundry Heads.

And first of all,

A Brief Introduction to this Un-
 dertaking, to render it more apt to be
 understood by the R E A D E R.

Before I come to speak of the Action, wherein the true Understanding hereof is most proper, I purpose to give a little further Instruction; and first of the Voice: When you mind to help your Horse therewith, it must be with a most mild and cheerful Voice; as to say, *Hoy, hoy; holla, holla; so hoy, so; hup, hup; enough, enough; a mere;* and many other such-like; but a correction is clean contrary, when with a terrible and thundering Voice; whereas in cherishing, the most mild and sweet Voice is used, as, *At your command, so my good boy,* with an inclination of tending your Body to him, and such-like Encouragements. So as also the sound of the Voice

24 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Voice to be used, as well as a Voice pronounced, by giving a chick with the Tongue, which may be called chicking, in pronouncing whereof the tip of the Tongue striketh the roof of the Mouth: And to also there is another sound of the Voice, as *Hab hab*. The next is the Hand, the true use and government whereof is the Ground of the whole Art; and as for the Bridle and the Rod, they are but deal and servile instruments, without all use, when they are not appointed for the right use, of the temperate and steady Hand bearing upon a firm and moderate stay, neither too much slacking, nor too much drawing in, every good Horse causeth a true and just Rein, bearing a steadiness, with a light and sweet Mouth in all actions; so as whatsoever the Horse doth, in both case, ready, and perfect, and being done with delight, most of necessity be best done, because it best profiteth both Man and Horse, neither of them being moved to any perturbation, grief, or pain, and as for the rod and wand being instruments only for the hand, how and when they are to be used, used or not used, and if the Bridle which the *Italians* properly call, *Il manico della cosa*, the handle of the scorne, we shall for the present pass them by.

The third thing is the Legs, wherein the use of the calves of the Legs, the heels, the Stirrup, and the Spur are to be handled, I shall, to avoid repetition and all manner of tediousness, refer them also to their proper places, and at present divide this our immediate concernment into certain general Grounds or Rules, to follow which the Rider may have daily use in teaching the whole Art to his Horse.

For as a young Scholar is to be taught, so a young Horse in the beginning is to be managed, whereby all their Actions might bring delight and admiration to the Beholders, and this must be done by mild and slow teaching, not too much, for a Horse may be wearied with long teaching at one time, but giving him often breath, high keeping, in courage, often rewarding, cherishing, using great familiarity, and observing he has no change of the Bridle till he be perfect, no change of bit, nor rough bit, no cutting or galloping of his nose or mouth, but gentleness to reader him easie, no beating nor whipping, no violence or passion,

with all manner of imitation of Nature's de-
sireth all the Horses actions more then won-
der Nature hath a natural love to it self, and an
affection to all things that are Enemies to the same,
only testified by that natural sympathy and an-
ger which may be observed in all Creatures, as the
h. never had experience of the Wolf's cruelty,
first sight of him doth tremble and fly for fear.

Of Curalling.

That the Rider never correct his Horse, but
by means and cherishing will not prevail, for so
that he will willingly yield by gentle means, if
it be sensible unto him, what, how, and when to do,
Horse that will not be moved by gentle means,
desireth himself that he is of a bad Nature, but
it shall happen wherein of necessitie correction
will; but if he offend, in the instant that he offendeth,
it, wherein how many do offend, all Mens eyes
see, beholding the common Horse-breakers, and
Riders to minister violent correction, when the
cannot so much as find a cause, nor himself ex-
planation, but error evermore taketh that for truth
itself, so as it plainly appeareth, that when a Horse
is taught, and yet notwithstanding erreth in his
to correct him for error, but not for ignorance,
causeth the Rider either to be mad, or as ignorant
as he.

*not fit for such Horses as Nature hath not framed for
right.*

That all Riders lose no time in teaching of good
but as for club-headed, distorted, ugly-coumened,
gouty-limn'd, short-thick-necked, fleshy-chop-
ped, their heads set to their necks as a horse, low-
ped, narrow-shallow-breasted, and evil-shaped Jades,
be turned either to the Carr, Plough, or other servile Im-
plements, for every particular Nature, (that is the tem-
perature of the Elements in every particular Body, without
all contradiction) causeth and mainntaineth the particular

24 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey

Voice to be used, as well as a Voice pronounced ving a chick with the Tongue, which may be calling, in pronouncing whereof the tip of the Tongue, keth the roof of the Mouth: And so also there is sound of the Voice, as *Hab hab*. The next is th the true use and government whereof is the Groue whilie Art; and as for the Bridle and the Rod, t but dead and fentless Instruments, without all us they are not appoited for the right use, of the te and fiddly Hand bearing upon a firm and moder neither too much packing, nor too much drawing ry good Horic caufeth a true and just Rein, bearing ness, with a light and sweet Mouth in all actions whatsoever the Horic doth, in both eare, ready, a foot, and being done with delight, must of necessit dore, because it belt plaseth both Man and Horic ther of them being moved to any perturbation, g pain, and as for the rod and wand bein; instrumen for the hand, how and when they are to be ollere or not used, and f r the Bridle which the *Italiens* ly call, *Umanes delizie*, the handle of the sti shall for the present passe them by.

The third thing is the Legs, wherein the use of th of the Legs, the Heels, the Surrap, and the Spur a handled, I shall, to avoi repition and all manner ouness, refer the same to their proper places, and sent divide this our immediate concernment into general Grounds or Rules, to follow which the Rid have daily us, in teaching the whole Art to his Horic.

For as a young Scholar is to be taught, to a young in the beginning is to be managed, whereby all the ons might bring delight and admiration to the Beh and this must be done by mild and slow teaching, t much, for a Horic may be wearied with long teach one time, but giving him often breath, high keep courage, often rewarding, cherishing, using great fa rity, and observing he has no change of the Rider till he be perfect, no change of bit, nor rough bit, no cutting or gal ling of his nose or mouth, but gentleness to render him easie, no beating nor whipping, no violence or passion,

but proceed with all manner of imitation of Nature's delight, this maketh all the Horses actions more then wonderful, because Nature hath a natural love to itself, and an infinite hatred to all things that are Enemies to the same, which is plainly testified by that natural sympathy and antipathy, which may be observed in all Creatures, as the Lamb which never had experience of the Wolf's cruelty, yet at the first sight of him doth tremble and fly for fear.

Of Corallion.

Secondly, That the Rider never correct his Horse, but when gentle means and cherishing will not prevail, for no doubt but that he will willingly yield by gentle means, if he be made sensible unto him, what, how, and when to do, but that Horse that will not be moved by gentle means, let the Rider assure himself that he is of a bad Nature, but if any thing shall happen wherein of necessitie correction is to be used; but if he offend, in the instant that he err eth, correct him, wherein how many do offend, all Mens eyes are Witnesses, beholding the common Horse-breakers, and ignorant Rider to minister violent correction, when the holder cannot so much as find a cause, nor himself express the reason, but error evermore taketh that for truth which is false, so as it plainly appeareth, that when a Horse hath been taught, and yet notwithstanding err eth in his discipline, correct him for error, but not for ignorance, which renders the Rider either to be mad, or as ignorant as the Horse.

Touching me fit for such Horses as Nature hath not framed fit to be taught.

Thirdly, That all Riders lose no time in teaching of good Horses, but as for club-headed, distorted, ugly-countenanced, fleshy, gouty-limned, short-thick-necked, fleshy-chopped, having their heads set to their necks as a hog, low-set-parted, narrow-shallow-breasted, and evil-shaped Jades, turn them either to the Cart, Plough, or other servile Im-plements, for every particular Nature, (that is the temperature of the Elements in every particular Body, without all contradiction) causeth and mainnaineth the particular

85 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

ation of the Body wherein it is ; and such shayed Horses were never compounded or framed of a true temperature of the Elements, and therefore impossible to be reduced to perfection of Action, otherwise then by abuse and great force which Nature abhorrath, and that is but for a small time, such as these made use of do shadow the glory of the Kingdom, disparage the judgment thereof, discourage many Gentlemen, either to become Breeders, Riders, or Maintainers of Horses, and cast misse over the perfections of our English Riders.

Of the Bridle, Saddle, and bringing the Horse to the Block the mounting and seat of the Rider, and of the Ring and staff entering in that Exercise.

When the Horse is made gentle, familiar and fit for the Rider to teach, put on a head-stall or cævrtane over his nose, with a pair of longe reins, but so loose and easie for his nose, as may neither hurt nor abate his courage, or his quick and lively feeling, and in a most gentle manner set a saddle upon him, with an upright short pommel, so as that the true use of the hand may not be hindered or impeded, the bolsters wherof should be broad in the top, to inclose the thigh, and yet to bear in hope that the knee be not pinched, neither the thigh kepe from the true setting-place; the seat wherof should be of a reasonable length and largenesse, the bolsters behind bearing forward to inclose and support the thigh to the former bolsters, the straps broad and strong, with broad girths, and very strong and broad buckles, crost girded, so as the saddle may reform on his back, whereby the seat will be easie, sure and certain without motion, leaving the near stirrup-leather almost half a hole longer then the right stirrup, and altho the Horse be gentle, yet because he hath a new Master and Rider not known unto him, being neither assured of himself, nor of that his Rider would have him to do, so as may be truly laid, he is not himself, but that he is troubled in mind, therefore to keep him from fear and perturbation, I would have a quiet staid Horse also saddled to be rid before him, and then bring them both to the Block, having the old jockey fall, and then the Colt, at which time

the Rider use all the mild and gentle words to the young Horse, making the reins of the bridle even and just, holding them in his left hand, no: stiff, nor altogether remiss or loose, and as soon as he is mounted on his back, let him sit quietly there a while, lest any sudden motion should breed any perturbation in the Horse, until the Rider has ferled himself in the saddle, his nose directly answering the Horse's temp' betwixt his ears, his legs hanging strait down, neither thrusting down the toe, nor lifting up the heel, but with his foot with such evenness in the stirrups as if he stood upon the ground, the stirrup-leathers rather short than long, winding his toes something nearer to the Horse's side then the heel, holding the reins even with his crest, and the point of the withers, a little above the main, with his thigh and knees close to the saddle, and his feet resting in the stirrup in due place, not too far thrust into the stirrup, with an upright and strait body; his ridge-bone answering the ridge bone of the Horse, so as the Horse and Rider may ever seem to be at one body in all motions, during which time let the Rider clav the Horse with his hand, to remove from him all fear or hard conceit of his riding, that done, let him go forward about two paces fast and softly, and stay again, making much of him, and so softly and quietly to the place where he intendeth to tread out a ring, all which must be done by the Rider, boldly and without fear, and as he must be thus used in going forward, so must he be used in treading and pacing out the Ring, in some new plowed ground, that is moist and deep of mould, where first let the old Horse enter betwixt the two furrows, so far as the Rider may have space and mould enough, and follow with the young Horse close to him, which will cause him the willinger to go, because he is directed and guided by the old Horse, by which means he will not be any way discouraged; then let the old Horse (the young Horse following) enter on the right hand, overthwart the furrows, and tread out twice together a round ring, containing in circuit about thirty paces, and being come about the second time where he began, let him tread out the like ring on the left hand, and after he hath gone twice about, let him begin again on the left hand, and so continue until

he has gone four times about the left ring, and the right six times, that done let him go faire and softly out of the self-same furrow where he began, about thirty or forty paces, and there stand still, keeping his head and his body right in the path, rememb'ring always to have one go by, to signifie his true performance, and to help it need be, and then let him go very gently back from the place he came, and there let the Rider alight, and make much of him, by coying him, giving him a little grass, hay, or bread in his mouth, to procure and win love, and thus let him be used for two days with a Horc before him, and after him let him then lead and legin himself, to tread and pace the ring in this gentle manner for the space of ten days, keeping a stewarte, stand and firm hand upon the reins, with a soocer feeling stay, carrying his selfe as Horses do, when they go to fight, whereby he will not only rein well, but bear his head staid, just and right, and when he knoweth what to do, and that for it he is always cherisched, he will strive to do it fatter and fatter, through the Rider's continual keeping of his hand steady, the Horc will do it with a wonderfull pride and delight, by giving him his eare, but a too hasty treat'ng of the Horc will weake the contry in his exercises, &c.

Of Trottting in the Ring, and other Parts to be taught a Horse, to bring him to be manag'able and fit for his service, &c.

In the pacing of the ring, the Rider must not carry any over hard hand, to dull the sense, but in rememb'reing as the feeling may be always fresh, otherwise by the violent haling and much gilling his neck, where he'd willingly have ease, to avoid it, he will let his head and his neck away, the true use whereof is, that standing in the furrow just and streight with his Body, the Rider moves him gently to go forwards, and in the very motion turns him on the right hand, by drawing very softly the right rein shorter with his right hand, low under the point of the Saddle, whereto if he yeild (as no doubt but he will) especially having trod the same before; let the Rider presently make much of him, neither drawing nor slack'ng the rein: At which time

time of his doing, but for the ease of the Rider and the Horse, if need shall be, let some skilful Person, his Keeper were west fit, come on his left side to his fore Shoulder, and thrust him in by little and little, and the Rider also by the Calf of the left Leg, and the cluck of his Tongue to be a help to make him go forward: If the Horse be such a one as I have describ'd, he will do it; but if he should not in the very motion of the turn, then let the Rider draw the Rein with his Hand, as before, whether it be on the right hand, or on the left, all which must be done by gentle dealing, so as the Horse may hope for rest and quietnes, whereby he will be ready to do whatsoever his Rider will; but if he be a Jade, or of an evil disposition by Nature, for my own part, I esteem him not of any worth, not fit to be kept.

Having spoken of pacing the Horse in the Ring, it followeth, that after ten days expir'd, the Horse be taught to trot the Ring, which must be begun in as slow and as gentle a trot as he was in his first beginning of pacing; increase his Ring-turns by two and two every day, until he make ten turns for the left Ring, and twelve for the right, which will augment his swiftness, whereof he should be restrained, until he be most perfect, and then he will do in with the greatest grace and pride that may be imagined, which is the true Propriety and Quality of all Art, evermore to affect and to effect Perfection; during which time of beginning of trotting, he may not be ridden with a Whip, nor wear any Bit, until he be most perfect in his trot, stop, and turn well on both hands; and not by any means suffer'd to gallop, until that he can also perfectly advance. By taking of this course he will be just in his pace, and trot, and stop with a staid Head and Neck, being the chief lustre and goodness that Nature and Art affordeth.

Wherefore when you begin to trot the Ring, be sure that at the first he is moved thereunto as gently and quietly as you can devise, and so in every Action whatsoever, upon a restrained temperate, and firm hand, with a sweet Stay, and with a true Rein, that is, that his Nose be just under his Forehead, neither too much over, nor too

¶ The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

much in, which is the just placing and setting of his Head, and will make him have a pleasant Mouth, when he cometh to near the Bit, in which consisteth the chief point of Horsemanship, because he is so to be maintain'd in all his Actions: This is most easie to be done and continued, if the Horse be of perfect shape and spirit; but if he should make resistance, for that he is either rammage or evil broken, then strok him swifly with quicknes of Voice, Rod and Spur, for the time of his trouing is the fittest time to make him forget his Toyh, and to attend his way; and if all this will not help, then spare not to gallop him; and if this fails, then be sure he will be a Jade from the beginning to the end, for a Horse of a good temper and perfect shape can never be of so bad a nature and quality.

I shall next tell how to make the Rider perfect in Stop. After he hath ended the number of his Ring-turns, which as so strok his Horse right on in the middle furrow, betwixt the Rings, until he come to the place of stop, and there to make a pretty stay, keeping his Body right in the path, wherein if the whole Body or any part stand overthwart, seek not at first to correct him for it thro' your too much Passion, but let a Foot-man direct him to stand right in the Path, as we said before, by thrusting in that part which stands out of order, or that he may cause the Horse to go farther in the same Path, and stop him, holding that Reins streigher on that side whereon he most forceth his Head than the other, which will enforce him to keep right; which when he yieldeth, ever cherish him; and after it will be convenient to trot and stop him on a Ground that is a little sleep, which something falleth, and immediately riseth; but when he is perfect, then he may do it on a Ground very sleep. But to teach him to go back, you must keep a firm staid hand on him, without giving him any Liberty, and then gently striking him on the Neck with his Rod, in that instant say, *Bark, bark;* but if he refuse, let a Foot-man with a rod gently strike him on the Knees, and so, by the gentle pulling in of the Rider's hand, and fair means, oblige him to it.

The proper Use of the Wand, Bit, and Spur, for the well teaching a Horse, and to bring him to his Passings and Manages.

Having shew'd how to ride a Horse without a Wand, Bit, or Spur, I will now shew you how to manage all three, together with the true Use of the Wand upon the Bit, one of the principal pieces of Horse-manage.

First therefore, when he that rides with a Wand, let him take it warily, that the Horse be not frighted therewith ; and to ascertain the Horse thereof, presently after he has receiv'd it, toy and scratch him about the Neck with the end thereof : And for the carrying it, it must be in the right hand, with the Joynt upright, and when he must use it, let the point fall close unto him, as occasion shall require ; but in his management of it, let him lay his hand on his right Thigh, and the Wand across the Horse's Neck ; and when he hath made his course, and turned on the right hand, then before the end of his second course, when he is almost ready to turn on the left hand, let him lift up his hand and rod, and hold the point right forward on the right side against his Eye, and as he changeth turns, so let him change his rod of the onefide and of the other ; but if his Horse will not turn on the side he would have him, let him strike him on the contrary side ; and when he is any way disorder'd, let him carry the Wand on the contrary side ; and when he would have him carry his forepart right, strike him on the Shoulder or Fore-legs ; and when he would have him fight behind, strike him on the rump and hanches. And thus much for the Use of the Wand, as occasion shall serve.

Now for the use of the Bit, which is an Instrument only guided and directed by the hand, and because the Ground of the Art of Riding depends wholly upon the use and true government of the hand, being guided by Reason and Discourse, to all the *sturze*, in all Motions and Actions, is and ought to answer to that Motion which the hand moveth ; I must not pass it over lightly.

32 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

First therefore, let the Bit that you first bit your Horse whihal be gentle and pleasant, yet so, that the gentle's cause him not to despise the Rider, nor the hardness drive him to despair: for you must understand, that Knowledge always presupposeth Reason, and Reason Sense and Sence and Reason: all which consist in a true mediocrity: and therefore amongst the most learned Precept's that were written in the Temple of *Apollo* in *Greece*, this was in the second place, *Nothing too much*.

For, if he presse him with the Bridle, if he carry his head well, yet must he presently ease his Bridle-hand, and make much of him, because he sheweth himself obedient to him, and whensoever he doth any thing well, and with delight, he must be very careful not to vex him, but ever so to win him, that he may be willing to please him.

So likewise when he bears a firm hand with a stay, that thereby the Horse brings in his head, and yields to his hand, yet he must shorten the Reins of his Bridle till his head be settled in its due place, that is, neither to carry his Forehead too much out nor too much in, and still to maintain him in that form in all his doings, yet not so that it exceed mediocrity or temperature, but remain light on the hand with a sweet mouth.

Thus having shew'd the Rider, that it must be done by keeping this order, I proceed.

Let him stay his Horse temperately upon an even hand, as his resistance shall require, without giving any other Liberty, then with his Rod to strike him gently upon the bowing of the Neck, provoking him mildly with the Spur on that side on which he most wryeth his Buttock, to the end that he may go just, until he draw back one of his fore Feet, which if he do, make much of him, and then stay a while and do the like, drawing only the Bridle, for the former cherishing will make him to understand, and then will he go lightly back with both the fore Legs, when he is touched on the Neck with the Rod, saying with a loud Voice, *Back*; at which Voice, with the feeling of the Rod and drawing of the Bridle, he will go back to the Rider's desire: And, always after, when he is out of the due and

and true stay upon the Bridle, let him do the like, that is, to go back in form aforesaid ; and altho' some disorder be committed, let not the Rider despair, for he shall find him easily won to a good Mouth, by this use of a temperate and firm Hand, which is by the mediocrity of slacking and drawing, properly named *a sweet Stay*, making him lie in upon the hand, champing the Bit with great pleasure, and a stay'a Head in due place, the true Tokens whereof are just He'ns, staid, and a light-bo'n Head with pleasure on the Bit, being Properties inseparable in every perfect-flop'd Horse's Action. But because it may seem very difficult to have a continuall of Perfection in every action, altho' it is common upon flop, or standing still, to be in order, yet perhaps, up in motion, he will leave playing upon the Bit, and bear upon the head, especially upon the main courser, which proceeds from a want of true Knowledge how to maintain and continue the hand just and firm with a sweet stay, so as that he may take pleasure on the Bit : And therefore how to maintain a Horse both in furious and quiet dealings, is to be consider'd of : If then that at any time he make any disorder, note it diligently, so stay him, and make him go backward, for in going back, he will bring himself to his right order again: Then presently make much of him, and forthwith move him forwards fair and gently, till he come to the place of flop. And as he must be therewit in going forward, so must he be used in treading in the Rings, first gently upon the pace, upon the trot, and upon the gallop, in practising whereof he must precisely observe that it be done with a temperate, staid, and fir - hand, otherwise he will gape, thrust his Tongue upon the Bit, or over the Bit, to defend himself, thrust his head out suddenly, pluck it in distainfully, or else shaking or moving his head one way or other, to be freed from the pressing of the intemperate hand, which is to him uncouth and contrary to Nature, the which Art should evermore labour to please. The true form and practice of drawing the Bridle is also to be learnt ; which is, that being mounted in the Saddle, let the Rider draw the Reins equal ; and if the Horse know not the Bit, then let the Bit be very slack, and let him hold

34 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

the Reins in his left hand, with the little finger and Ring-finger between, under the Pummel of the Saddle, as near the Withers as he can, and then with the right hand draw the Reins softly and equally together: rough the left hand, so as the Strangers by can sc reliv perceive it, the which he must not remove until he feel the Horse to stay upon the Bit, and there hold them without slacking or further drawing, until he perceive whether the Head stand in true form; which if it be not, then let him a little yield his left hand again, and standing so a pretty while, bring his left hand to his former place again, where the Horse made the first stay upon the Bit; then let him draw the Reins with his right hand somewhat more through the left, as before, but so little and gently, as scarcely to be perceived, for so must all the motions of the hand be, and then keep it firm and staid a pretty while, and if he yield, tho' very little, let him keep his hand still at one stay, neither slackening nor drawing it, whereby he will feel the ease that he hath got by yielding; and then profindly make much of him: But if it so happen, that the Reins fall slack, let him not remove his left hand, but draw them through his left hand, as before, for they must not be slack until they stay again upon his right hand, whereunto whensoever he yieldeth, make much of him, continuing still in this manner to sollicite him till his Head be in its due place, that is, neither too much out, nor too much in; after which, if he bear not light, let his Rider strike him gently on the Knees of his fore Legs, to make him to go back, whereby he will bring in his head, and then will the Bit move, and his Hand find ease; but let him be very careful at that instant to keep his hand so firm as that he neither slack nor draw in, to the end he may feel and receive the ease of his own motion of yielding, which willingly he will not loose, it being delightful to his nature, but take some pleasure to stir the Bit in his Mouth, and go backward with it; the which when the Rider fushes, are a kind of the warning of his Mouth, which to him, not a satisfaction being seen, with observation of good order, he may be brought to a more continued Perfection.

Thus

Thus I have shew'd the expert Rider so much as the Art may help him ; but if the Shape and Nature of the Horse be oposite and repugnant, as in the greatest number of Horses, it is to no purpose ; howsoever, for a time it may seem to be taught, yet questionless it cannot be of any continuance.

But because in the whole Art of Riding there is no one thing more difficult than to make a Horse trot just : And that the Perfect on thereof is the Perfection of all other of his Doin's, I purpose to give further Rules.

Particular Rules and Directions for the Management of a Horse, to train him up to a good and commendable Trot, being the Foundation of all.

1. Let the Rider observe, that when he is teaching his Horse herein, or any other Lesson, that he do not trouble him with any other thing at that time, neither suffer him to begin to learn any other.
2. That he do not suffer any other to ride him until he be perfected by himself in such Lessons as he taught him, lest he should be confus'd by the diversity of Teachers, and their manner of Teaching.
3. That when he is brought to a just Stay of Head, and assurance of the Bit, that then the Rider is to maintain him therein to a full perfection.
4. When he is out of order, then let him stay him, and make him go back, as before was mentioned.
5. When he is in order, then let him make much of him, and stay not long, but with a firm hand gently put him into his Trot again.
6. If he continue in his good order, cherish him, guiding his Body, with a pleasant and gentle motion of the Cylves of your Legs move him to do it more expeditiously, which if he be of a good nature, he will speedily perform ; always remembering to keep a firm hand, unless he bring in his Head.
7. If his Trot continue not light upon your hand, stay him, and cause him to go back, which will bring him in order again, and then gently put him into his Pace, and

so to his Trot, as before ; which being well done, cherish and delight him with all the sweetnes that may be, so that the Rider may ever win his Love thereby ; guide him home by some leading Lanes, and give him a little Grass or Hay out of your hand ; tickle, scratch him, and speak to him most loving words, which will make him at his next Exercise do all things to his Rider's greatest content, and within twenty days, or thereabouts, he will Pace and Trot in such order, as that the Rider may always afterwards trot him most swiftly in the Rings or in the Manage.

8. In his swift Trot, by all means keep your true Seat and firm Hand, so that he lose not that excellent form and grace before prescribed ; but do not Gallop him till he be full and perfect in his swift Trot, and then out of that trot, to put him to a swifter gallop in the large Rings, even to the Stop : But beware you draw not your hand suddenly to you, but by a little sway of your Body, Back and Hand together, and stay your hand there until he gives a step or two, and there stay him, and suffer him not to go forward, and at that instant also make much of him, and so let your hand and body reassume the same place again.

9. If he should then offer to go forwards, stay him with the like sway, and then alight, and lead him home, making much of him, as you did before.

10. I dare to assure the Rider of the right use of what hath been said, and of the success thereof, therefore let him follow his Practice, and continue it ; let him pace his Horse overtwain some deep Hollow as fast as he can for half an hour, but suffer him not by any means to trot, keeping his hand in a firm and temperate stay, as before, and if he still find his head in due place, his carriage light and pleasant upon the Bit, he may assure himself that he hath gain'd the perfection of the Hand, and the true use thereof, for the teaching and making of a young Horse ; wherein observe, that if he be of a perfect shape, his Head will be in the due place, and light upon the Bit.

Of the Manag'd Horse, with further Instructions, &c.

I now intend to discourse a little of the Horse that is already taught, and brought to perfection; with him the expert Rider hath small need to make use of any Rod, or other help, but to keep his true, just, and perfect Seat, because his Horse, by the least token of Bridle or Spur, will do all things in such time and measure, as the Beholders will judge the Man and Horse to be but one Body, one Mind, and one Will: And therefore, how the Reins should be carried, placed, and used, is the only thing to be spoken of: The Reins he must hold in his left hand, placing the little finger betwixt the two Reins, and the thumb close upon the Reins, so as the hand remove not from the Crest of the Horse, for by the motion of the hand it is signified to the Horse which way you would have him turn, slacking it on the other: The Order and Manner whereof hath been, and is yet diversly used of the best Horsemen, and therefore I leave it to every man's use, as he findeth it most fit. But in the running at the Tilt, where the Horse neither doth nor can turn, the Rider must not draw the Bridle towards the Tilt, but only strain the Rein that is next the Tilt, to make him carry his head towards it.

(1.) Because the true shape and goodness of the nature of the Horse is it that Art attendeth and worketh upon, in those *Horses* the Rules of Art have Perfection with continuance; so as the Horse that is of perfect shape, and well taught, shal not endanger Wind, or Limb, or Defor-mity of Body.

(2.) His Rider shall never be in peril by rearing or running away.

(3.) Nor shall the Rider ever be grieved with heavy bearing upon his hand, but perform all with great delight. Neither shall he need Canetion, Mufrole, or Martingale, or such-like, but only false Reins.

(4.) And lastly, this Teaching will manifest the difference betwixt the true Knowers and ignorant Riders, which will be perceived by the Doings the Horse doth re-
present.

38 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

present and express when he would appear most beautiful, and ther by render both the expert Rider, nor the ignorant, and himself, to appear most nobly, with such delight to the beholders, that they will seem to be ravish'd with it; all which is attain'd by Discretion, taking of Time, with Moderation and Temperance, which is little regarded, and of very few, who will rather chuse to ride out of order, and that with such extremitie of Spur and Rein, that for want of Breath they commit many strange Disorders, wherev the poor Horse is cruelly torment'd, having no other to ride him than one without Discretion.

After your Horse hath perfectly learned swifly to trot, and to stop, and as well to go back, then ought he to be taught rightly to advance; which is by liftin up both his fore Feet just and even together, like to a Goat, somewhat above the Ground, and so to let them fall even and just twice or thrice together, the true doing whereof will cause him to make a just perfect Manage, and a ready and true turn: for the attaining whereof, trot him gently forty or fifty foot in fme plain way, then give him a just stop, which he will truly perform, because he hath before perfectly learned the same; let him always keep a steady, pleasant, and perfect hand on the Bridle, then instantl, with a wild Voice, say, Nap, Nap, striking him at that instant with his Wand on the right Shoulder, and also with both the Calves of the Legs together, but spur him not, if possibly without it he will advance; and this with a fide labour and par ce reching, no doubt but he will attempt to do twice or thrice together, which if he do, then in that instant make much of him (although he did it vry nearely) then let him pause a little time, and give him breath, and trot him again in the same manner the like distance of ground, and as before, so gently use him again; but if he do not better every time he is taught, he must be still sollicited until he do better.

And after that he can in plain ground perfectly advance, then teach him vely, upon the hang'g knole of a Hill, to bring him perfectly to stop, and run sliding

upon his Burrecks or hinder Legs, which is very handsom, beautiful, and graceful for Manage and Turn; and therefore let him do it before he is taught any other Lesson then what is shewn; and when he wil do it upon a sole-trier, upon the twist-trier, and afterwards upon a six-foot gallop, and not before, but never upon a swif gallop, un il he be perfect both in Turn and Manage. If he advance too high, and not just and even, with a good grace, as he ouer-his, then may the fault speedily be found, and easily amended by immediately correcting him with one even stroke over his Legs, the Ward again order'd and convey'd out of his sight, with a sweet laid hand on the Eridge; Few Tryals will soon amend and perfect what is amiss in the Horse.

And whereas some appoint many helps for Horses that are harder to turn on the one side than on the other, (although I confess their general Desire is more apt to the left hand than to the right) yet to a Horse of good nature and perfect shape, a little Art will speedily teach him to teach others.

Of Half-turnings, Dablers, Chambettes, Manage, Courir, &c.

It now remayneth to shew when to make the *Half-turn* and the *Dabler*, the *Chambette*, the *Manage*, to paſs a ſwift *Courir*, the *Courir*, and ſuch-like.

After he is very perfect in thoſe I have ſet down, he is to make a true and a just half and double turn, which ſhould be in this manner: First, when the Rider hath gently trouſed, flopped, and advanced his Horse the length of a ſhort Courſe, let him teach him gently and mildly to make the half-turn, (beginning al-ways on the right hand) that is, for the Rider to turn him with the help of his left Leg, that his Head may stand that way which before his Tail stood; it is called a half-turn, becauſe he makeſt but half a ci cle; but if in the turn he ſet his Head that way it flooſt at the firſt, that is a whole ci cle, and therefore called a whole-turn: But let him firſt do the half-

half-turn perfect, which must be done by helping him with his Voice and Caſt of his Leg, and not at first by any means to have him spurred, if he can be otherwise brought unto it, because a Spur is a correction which is not to be used, but at that instant when he hath committed an Error, and not while he remains ignorant what to do, by which means undoubtedly, being a ſensible Creature, he will perceive his Errors and Offences, whereby with little correction he will early amend any Fault: Let the Rider never go about to make him diſpair, but continually encourage him; for having formerly attain'd a perfection of a jaſt, even and ſwift Trot in the Rings, (the very true ground of all other Leſon) he will eaſily turn on the right hand, ſetting his Head that way his Tail flood; the which being perfectly attained, then close it up with another half-turn on the ſame hand, with the preſcriu'd h. ips, ſetting his Head and all his Body in the ſame way it was at first; to give him Breath, and make much of him, then make him do as muſh on the left hand, and to change from hand to hand, turning always on the right.

1. In the doing whereof, obſerve whether he bring on the contrary Leg o'er.

2. That he do it after the firſt bound of advancing, and after the ſecond or third bound.

3. That the Rider avoide, as he hath been ſaid, begin on the right hand, and end on the right.

4. That after he is perfect in a turn of the whole turn, that he make him to do it ſlowly and roundly, without ſtop or ſtay of the half-turn, and ſo will, in cloſing of every whole-turn, and in as maner as a compass as may be.

5. After he is perfect, as aforesaid, give him on each hand three whole turns, whereof let the firſt be very fair and softly, beginning at the right hand, and ending at the right; in performing whereof, the Rider muſt always help him with his Tongue, his Rod and his Leg, by which continual uſe, before he teach him any other Leſon, (which ſhould never be done, unleſs he be perfect in the Leſon he is learning) ſo that the Rider ſhall in the end, with

with discreet and temperate teaching, bring him to an admirable Perfection, keeping him in measure, that the one be not wiser than the other; if either, the last, which for the most part is as speedy as perfect.

Now, to proceed to the Managing of a Horse, the true signification whereof is to be rightly understood, by such as intend to be expert in *Horse-manship*, for to be ignorant of the *Termes*, is to be ignorant of the *Art*; I take it to be a compounded word of the word *manus* and *agi*, (the Hand in this Art being the Instrument of Instruments) doth guid, and govern the Horse to every Action, and therefore may fitly be said *Manegere*, or as the *Italians* properly call it, *Maneggiare*, which is as much as skilfully to handle.

And therefore when the Rider shall exercise the Horse perfectly and gracefully in his place, Trot, Stop, Advance, Double or Single-turn, Courcir, Gallop, Leap, Caper ole, Corvet, Assalt, or whatsoever the Hand, being the principal Order or *prime mover*, may truly and rightly be called *Managing*, which cannot so rightly be done without the general knowledge of the Practice of the Precepts of the whole Art.

And altho' many worthy Horsemen have and do only rest and reiter Managing to Galloping, and to bring a Horse to and fro in one self-same path, by half-rest, whole-rest, and when the Rider manageth with a half-rest, causing the Horse, at the end of every managing path, after he hath stopp'd to advance twice together, and at the second bound to turn and rest one bound; doth not the Rider therein exercise the Trot, the Stop, the Advance, and the Turn, which he formerly learned, and according to the same manner? Or, when he manageth with the whole-rest, and turns him at the third bound, or manage him without the rest, by turning him immediately upon the Stop, without any tarryance or rest at all, which only is most common with us in *England*; and yet the managing of the half-rest is most necessary for the attaining of perfection; doth not the Rider keep and maintain the Horse in one path, one place of stop, making him keep his Ground, and there-

42 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

therein came his Head, Neck, Legs, and his Body just, closing his turn roundly, and in a narrow room, with true time and measure in every action, as he hath been formerly taught: how then can managing be properly refir'd to one only Action, when it is the perfect acting of every Action and Action he hath learn'd, wherein when the Rider's Horse is not ready and perfect, he may encrave the offending of his Legs as he will, and make an alteration of his Turns and Exercises, to find out the truth of his Obedience: and when they are first artificially, and then exactly perform'd, then may the Rider be truly said to be a perfect Manager.

Sundry principal things yet remaining to be known to such as would be Expert or Compleat Horsemen, relating to the True Managing.

Now are to be shewed what are the principal things that are to be observ'd in the true Managing of a Horse.

He is to be taught his Manage with a soft Trot, and not with a Gallop; my Reason is, because thereby he may be at the first scuffle of Appearance what he is to do, and how to do, and that graciously, by the bowing of his Hooft behind, by turning round wth the Chambers, which is by holding up the fore-foot on the side he should turn, whilst he bring over the contrary Leg, and letteth it not down until he have closed his turn, so as thereby he shall carry not his fore-foot above the ground, nor trayling upon the ground, which is disgraceful.

When the Rider teaches him Hove (which is after he can stop well) let him advance before, and turn readily on both hands, then with a soft Trot come to the place of stop about twenty paces in length, and make him advance twice together, and at the second bound turn him on the right hand, (for on that hand you must always begin) helping him so, that by bowing o his Hooft behind, he move his forepart orderly, then immediately in a gentle manner trot him back to the place that you came from, and then there, after he hath made his stop, at the second bound

bound of his advancing, turn him on the left hand, observing the like order until the Rider has gone ten or twelve times, and at the last cause him to advance twice together. And thus much for the half rest, which is to advance thrice, and at the third heund to turn ; but be sure he be perfect in one Lesson before you teach him another.

In all the Rider's Maragings, let his body still accompany his Horse with a good Grace ; and when that he hath very perfectly learned his Mamage on a soft Trot, then he may marage him with a Gallop, giving him on each hand one fingle turn ; and a little before he is turned, let the Rider hold his Wand on the contrary side, whereby he will know on what side to turn ; and at the stop let the Rider make him to advance, either with his Voice, Rod, or Spur, always being careful to give him breath, evermore beginning with a gentle Gallop until he be perfect ; but I wish the Rider so to use and exercise his Horse, that he may be long Master of a good and perfect Horse, and not to spend or spoil him in a little time, in teaching him needless toys, as some ignorant Persons use to do.

After the Horse is perfect in such Lessons as have been formerly taught, and is grown to his full and perfect strength, then let the Rider begin him with a short Courteir, in a fair fardy way, and with a lively Voice put him forward, forcing him to run swiftly, roundly, and smoothly, with a fiddy Heat, and lightly to stop himself on his Buttocks ; then let him turn him on the left hand, and soothly pace him to the other end of the Courteir-path, and there stop him, and turn him again to the right hand, and so leave off and rest him. And as this passing Courteir or fuit Gallop must never be done or taught, until the Horse be most perfect in all the Lessons ; so must it be done very sparingly and seldom, as once or twice in a month at the most.

Of the Bound, Leap, and York.

Some have a desire for to have their Horses to Bound, Leap, and York; and tho' I know it might be most exactly done by the best-spirited Horses, but tending altogether to their destruction, and a matter rather of foolish delight than of any use, I leave it to the disposition of the Owner, wishing much rather to have such dangerous Exercise omitted than practised, unless that there were more Plentie of Horses that are fit for the same, or to be spared to be unmercifully spoiled: Therefore let not my Reader admire that he meets here with so short Remarks on them.

Of the Capriole and Corvette.

The difference betwixt these two is, that the *Capriole* or Goats-leap is always in going forwards, and the *Corvette* still in one place: These are to be learned and taught by one Order, but neither of them will ever be learned, and therefore never exactly done, unless the Horse be very perfect for to flop, which must be much bending of the Elbow of the hinder Hoofs or Heels of the Horse. Now the *Corvette* may in some sort resemble the dancing of the Bear at a Stake; for when he danceth and pranceth up and down in one place, lifting his forefeet even and just together, seeming to turn if he might be suffer'd; that of the Bear is a proper resemblance of the *Corvette*, the which is never well done, unless the Horse be just and steady of Head and Body, bowing the hams of his hinder Legs, as if he would sit or slide on his Buttocks. And the *Capriole* is in the same manner, but still going forwards, seeming as though he would yerk behind, by advancing his rump, but doth not; and as he doth it forward, so will he do it backward and side-long.

Now the Rider need not to teach his Horse either of these, until, as hath been said, he be a most perfectly perfect in those Lessons formerly mentioned, because their Lessons

are only learned by stopyng and advancing; the which if he have once perfectly and long practised, then Trot him sundry days uppon some hanging ground, and upon the knole of the Hill on the fave ground; make him to advance twice together, the which he will do, and then help him with the sound of your Lips, to trot two paces farther, and there to stop and advance twice together at the end of the two pace all the length of a hanging Hill downwards, still remebering to cherith him when he does well, and to give him breath, that all his Performances may be done with delight. And if he be helped with the word, saying, *Ho*, and with the Rider's Rod, by striking him upon the fore-part of his Shoulders, he will go from stop to stop, advancing both the fore Feet and hinder Loynes, with tune and measure, as often as the Rider pleases, and in such a just, even and staid a manner as will be very pleasant to the Beholders.

Now, because I would not have the young Rider to begin any Lesson, but by the direction of a perfect Master, and in that course to continue, so must the young Rider endeavour with himself to know the reason of all his Practices; and therefore he must be sure to be present at the Exercises of the most skilful Horsemen, and, as *Salomon saith*, *Let his Foot tread often upon this Threshold*; let him be acquainted with the best Practitioners, and when he is able rightly to judge, and to make a true difference between good and bad, then let him practise as often as he can, and never doth it to become a *Perfect Horseman*, so as to be able to teach whatsoeuer is fit for a Horse to do, and a Young Gentleman to know.

*Eight Infallible R U L E S to be Observ'd
and Practis'd by every Horseman.*

I. **D**O not gallop your Horse before he can stop well.

II. Do not run him before he can stop in his Gallop.

III. Do

46 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

- III. Do not swiftly gallop him before he can stop.
- IV. Do not make him a Runner before he be six or seven years old.
- V. In all his doings, from the beginning to the end, keep his Reins true, and his Head steady; for this Rule is the Foundation of all other Rules.
- VI. In the morning early, when he is empty, before he eat any thing, teach and exercise him until he be perfect; and after, twice or thrice in a week is sufficient.
- VII. In all his teaching and exercise, do it moderately and temperately, and leave him, always after the well-doing of his Lessons, both in teach, and with a good Nouish.
- VIII. After he is perfect in his Lessons, let the Rider ever i'c him not always in one place; neither let him confine himself to a just and certain Instant of Time, v.g. neither more nor less, neither longer nor shorter.
- IX. In managing of his Horse, let him not gallop him swiftly at the first, but with a soft pace, and seldom with a gallop.
- X. In correcting of his Horse for an Error, let him correct him even in that instant he commits it.

Other Ways and Methods for the Management of a Horse for War, Travel, Hunting, Racing, &c.

Though these I have mention'd are by all expert Horsemen accounted the best for training up Horses to their exact Paces and Management, because herein native Freedom without Shackles is the most agreeable; yet since some use another method, I shall give a brief account of it, and leave them both indifferently to the choice of those that are to practice herein, v.t.

When you are to teach your Horse the true Amble, which is the Ground of all others, lead him a wracking pace in your Hand, and observe the Motion he is most inclined to, whether Trot, running, haffard-Amble, or others; so mount and wrack him deliberately, by the help

help of his Mouth-weeks, with his Snaffle smooth and large; and when you have brought him to some Management, to ensue the Tramel without stumbling or flying out, form it in this manner:

Take strong Parkhbread, and twist it into a Cord about the thickness of a Jack-line, so firm, that it will not give the least way; let your Hocle or Paris lashed about the Legs be close, soft and immovable, the Backbands likewise and somewhat broad, that they may not injure the Horse's Flanks; the length of the side-ropes thirty six inches; but if the Horse be of a long reach, you may add an inch more: Place the Hocle on the fowl of the fore-leg, and upon the hinder just above the Fetlock, made of fine Girtweb made of Cotton, Flannel, or some such-like soft matter, lashed with Neats-Lether Tack of even lengths, suppl'd with Tallow, and divers holes punched in them at an even distance, to pass through the Nodds, that are to be on the side-ropes, so that by buckling the Ropes, may be drawn up or let out at pleasure the Tack, not exceeding ten inches, nor the holes in them four; then let the Backbands that are to hold up the side-cords, if you tramel all your Horse's Legs, be made of Girtweb laced with Flannel; but if only two Legs, Fletching or strong Tapes but observe it keep the side-cords even in a line, without either twiching up or suffering it to fall, for rising shorter than the side-cord, and falling makes it apt to enangle the Horse.

The Use of the Tramel.

The Tramel well made, proceed to use it in this manner, s/c.

Bring your Horse into a place that is even free from Clumpers or Stones, and put on the Tramel, your Horse standing as even as may be, not straining toward nor crimping toward, but in a just and even proportion; then laying your hand on the Bridle, by gently straining his Head, bidge him to move forward, compel him to Ambie about the Ground chosen very leisurely, using him with much

48 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

gentleness, and often cherishing him with your Voice, till he feel the Tramel, and begin to be acquainted with what he is to perform: And by this means, though at first he trip or stumble, he will be brought to it more at leisure, and become familiar with it, if your harshness hinder it not: Though it is not amiss, if at first, when he begins to learn, you permit the side-ropes to be longer than the measure mention'd, to prevent his twitchings; but when he begins to be perfect, have them ever of a constant length, lest the over-length render him a slow Ambler, and the over-length cause him to halt or shuffle.

Times proper to alter the Tramel, and convenient to mount, &c.

When the Horse can Amble pretty well by hand, change the half-Tramel, by removing it from one side, and placing it on the other; and so, as you see occasion, put on the whole Tramel, till he run pretty swift, without the motions of snapping or stumbling; then try him upon uncertain and uneven ways, up and down hill, and in such Roads as you think you shall after have occasion to ride him: Then having marr'd him to it, mount on his Back, or set another to do it, whilst you stay his Head, and keep him from any inconveniency, and observe well how he treats: After that yourself may mount, cherish him often, and so oblige him to mend his pace, till he ~~more~~ with as much agility as you can desire; and forget not between whilst to put on sometimes the half-Tramel, and at other times the whole, shifting often from one side to the other, lest he forget his pace; and in so doing twice or thrice a day, he will in a month or six weeks be brought to good order, and then without a Tramel ride him on the Road, without chasing the Way: Have with you also a half-Tramel, so that if he falter, alight, and put it on, which will quickly mind him of what you intend he should do.

How to Stop in a full Course, Advance, &c.

To make Horses stop in any Pace, draw suddenly your Reidle hard, straight and steady; Hard and Sharp, and by that means, he will stop Firm and Close, also Even: But if after you have drawn in your Hand he turn Side-ways, or more Forward, put him to it again, and when he stops well, attempt to make him Advance upon your Stop; that is, rise with his fore-Legs, which is done by a sudden clapping the Calves of the Legs closer to his Sides, inhearing to touch him with your Spur, but flake your Whip or Switch over him, which will add much Grace to his Stopping; and try him till he well understands, and will perform it.

How to oblige Horses to Retire, and enlire the various forms of Bits.

To make him do this, draw him back with a steady Rein, that with his Legs lifted up as in a Trot, he may retire, he may suddenly retreat three or four Paces; which in case you design a Horse for War, is a very commendable thing, and indeed in any other, on several Occasions; observe herein to make him do it in a direct Line, not turning to one side or the other, nor suffer him to Shuttle in his retiring, but to take his Legs up even and clever from the Ground.

Having brought him to this, if you design him for War, take away his Trench and Martingal; leave only the Cavaeon of three or four Pieces or Joynts to be used, v.g. A Joynt in the middle, and a strong King fastened to it, and on each side a Joynt with Rings before them, and fasten to them divers Reins, in drawing of which you may use your Horse at command: Or, if this be too hard, put into his Mouth a common Bitt made up with a French Check, fixed to the proportion of the Horse's Neck, for if it be otherwise, there can be no true Management, for the long Check lifts up the Horse's Head, and the short one pulls it down.

Turnings, and strait Turns, &c.

The Turnings are when the Face of the Horse in the motion is kept to the Centre or Post, or tho he wheel with his Buttocks swiftly, yet keeping his Face properly to the Enemy.

The strait Turns are when he keeps his Buttocks inward, or close to the Center or Post, and bearing about, makes the Circumference with his fore-part, advancing a little toward the Enemy, that would avoid him.

To do the first, called the strait Turn, fassen a Rein to a ring in the middle of your Caveran, about three Yards in length, and to the other two Rings two Reins somewhat shorter; so Sealed and Sailed bring him to the Post; put the Reins over the Saddle-bolster, and fassen them at such straighenes to the Pummel that he may feel them, and if you be then desirous to turn to the Right, take the short Reign on the left side of the Caveran, and bring it under the Saddle fore-Bolster up to the Pummel, and fix it at such a straithnes that may either force his Head from thence to the Post, his Eyes looking to the Right; then let a Stander by hold the Rein on the right side of the Caveran at the Post, moving it so, that the fore part of your Horse's Body may at full turn about; then take the long Rein in your own Hand, causing the Horse to bear his hinder parts inwards, which may be done by gentle striking him on the outward Shoulder and Buttocks, as occasion is found, causing him to turn about the Post, his hinder part being the Centre, the fore part in motion, making the Circumference. Then fass him on the one hand till indifferent perfect, then change the Rein to the other on the outward ring of the Caveran, and so in the like manner teach it him on the other hand; and by so doing Morning and Evening, you may soon bring him to it with a touch of your Switch; observe to have a little Trots round, that he place his outward fore-Leg over the inward, and so by degrees, in his Wheeling, cause him to mind his pace swiftly and distinctly, and in as direct a Compas as can easily or conveniently be performed, till

at last he will with such celerity, that his fore and hinder Legs move equal.

This Lesson perfectly learned, Mount, and let one hold the long Rein, and another the short one, and then with the motion of your Hand upon the left Rein of the Cavesson and Bit, bearing his Head from the Post, and by the motion of the Calves of your Legs and Switch upon his outward Thigh, cause him to bear his hinder parts to the Post, and Exercise him till he perform it as well with you on his Back as he did before; thus take away the Cavesson, and Exercise only with the short Rein: And so having brought him to do it at the Post, he will be induced to do it in the open Field without one.

The strait Turn is keeping his Face to the Post at the Centre, and swiftly flying about with his hinder parts, the Reins both long and short, must be used as before, only you must not give the short Rein any slope, but draw it nearer to the Post; still as he moves about, follow his hinder parts with the long Rein, and observe in his motion whether he bear his hinder Legs one over the other, as is expressed by the four Legs. By the help of your Rod making him bring his hinder part swiftly round the Post, and when he is perfect, Mount him, and cause him to move swift or slow, sometimes at the Post, and then in open Ground, as you see convenient: This will accomplish him for the Wars, Racing, Hunting, and other Mat-
ters.

Particular Observations on Anding, Raking and Galloping.

Observe as to the fitness of pace, the Horse's motion of his Legs when he takes them from the Ground, and you will perceive in his crois moving what he is properly designed for. *Fig.* If his hinder and fore Leg move together at one and the same instant, and in this motion the sooner he takes up his Limbs from the Ground, the open, easier and swifter is his Tread; but if he do it uneas-
ily, slowly, and in a fluffling manner, that denotes Stum-
bling, Lame-ness, or some such imperfection. If he tread
Crois, or Narrow, it signifies he is subject to Interfering,

xx. The Gentleman's Compt at Jockey.

and will hardly be induced ever to Tread sure. If he takes his steps Askew and Uneven, it denotes him subject to Faint and Tire, unable to perform long Journeys or hard Service. If he treads Long, it signifies him subject to Strains and Over-rushes: And therefore a moderate even pace, and the clever carrying of a Horse's Legs is to be chosen, that your labour in Teaching may not be thrown away. But to Particulars.

As for Ambling.

If you chuse your Horse for Pleasure and Ease, then none is more fuitible than this, it being opposite to Trotting; as thus, both the Foot on one side must have equal motion, *viz.* The far fore Leg and the far hinder Leg, which must move just Even, Smooth and Swift, for if the Horse tread false or a wry, it takes away much of the easiness of his Pace; and if Short, then no more Ground is ridded than if he went a round Foot-pace: If he treads Rough, it denotes Rouling in a shuffling manner, and is a false Pace, which has been taught him by an Unskilful Hand, and he will be apt to fall out of it into a Trot, or in a short time forget it.

As for Ral(jog.

This is a Pace most used in Hunting or riding Post, being between a Pace and full Gallop, by some termed a full Speed, yet little differs from Ambling, except in being more Swift and of a shorter Tread, tho in Ambling the Ground is better ridded, yet this pace is more easie, and highly approved by many expert Horse-men, who chuse particularly to teach it, tho I find no certain Rule for it, but conclude it a Motion natural to most Horses that are brought to the Amble.

As for the Gallop.

It is most appropriated to the Trotting Horse, for falling out of his Trot, he has no other pace but the Gallop.

As likewise a Horse well used to Racking, will naturally take this Motion; but the Pace is very awkward to be brought to it, although in a while, with good Use and Gentleman, he may be brought to it; and the reason why this is at first irksome to him, is, because having been trained to a fast Pace, when he is forced to a Motion somewhat of the like nature, (tho' much swifter) by straining to swifter his pace, he scambles with his Legs; but in a Month's time understanding the alteration, he will be apt enough to take it with little trouble; however, beware that you Gallop him not too often, nor to Excess, lest it spoil his pace, rendering it hard, coming something near the Trot, by reason of Straining.

Observe in the cleverness of Galloping, that your Horse raises his Feet nimble from the Ground, but not too high, that neither he rouleth or bounces himself, but stretching forth his fore-Legs, his hinder Legs keep Time cleverly and swiftly, that he cuts not his Knee, nor croisseth or strikes one Foot against another, but still leadeth with his far-Foot. If he Gallop short and round, his fore Feet well rising, denotes him Strong, but not Swift, and so consequently fitter for War than Racing. If you perceive he takes up his Legs confusedly as if he did it in pain, he will never make a good Galloper, for it denotes the Sinews to be shrunk, that with little Travel, he'll often be subject to Halting and Lameness. As for the Trot, it is natural to all Horses; but the lofty prancing Trot is for War accounted the best, and that for Travel that rides most Ground with least pain to the Horse, he taking up his Feet cleverly and even from the Ground without Interferring.

The Running Horse, or Racer, how to Manage, Feed, Puffet, bring to the Pugilists, &c.

Having spoken pretty largely as to what hitherto relates to this noble Creature in many Particulars, I shall now, for the Accommodation of Gentlemen and others, who have much desired it, give Directions, Plain, Evive, and with as little Charge as possible, how to Order and Manage a

Horse for bringing him to run a Race, or more properly, to be Matched: I know that there were some who said, it is impossible it should be done under six Months; others allow five, and none of past times under. This I look upon as a design not so much to rob a Gentleman of half a Year's Pleasure, as to put him to troublous Charges, to the advantage of such who undertake to look to, and order Running-Horses; and therefore I thought fit to Undeceive such as have been Imposed on, by plainly laying down a nearer, less Chargeable, and more easie Method, altogether as safe and Effectual. *Viz.*

If you design to Match your Horse, consider well the State of his Body, and do it not inconsiderately; and this may be observed in three Particulars.

(1.) If he be Foul or Fat, or newly taken from Graft or Soil.

(2.) Note; If he be very Poor or Lean by over-Travelling, Infirmitie or hidden Cause, you cannot at present discover.

(3.) Take notice, if he has had good Ullage, moderate Exercise, and be in good Estate and Plight;

And from these observe in the first Case, to take a longer time for Keeping, Matching, and bringing him into good Order, fit for Running, which indeed if long, is the most violent of Exercise; in this case get two Months, or if you can, something more.

In the second Estate of the Horse's Body, you need not take so long a time, especially in case only of Leaner, because the Grease cannot injure him, and you may exercise him with his Feeding, that is, at all seasonable times.

In the third Estate, which I consider as a Mean between the other Extreams, he may be Dieted for the Match in a Month or six Weeks. But to come nearer to my purpose, I allow two Months to be a sufficient time to prepare a Horse under any of these Estates of Body to run a Match; and these, for the better leading to the end of what I propose, may properly be divided into shorter Periods of time, *viz.*

The first Fornights Ordering the Running-Horse, &c.

If the Horse be Fat or Foul, newly taken from Gras or Soil, and you have or intend to March him, bring him to a clean dry Stable, Litter him well, and ever Night give him two Quarts of *first Beer* and as many *dry Oats*, Rub him down and Litter him well with dry clean Wheat-straw, and early in the Morning rouse him, if laid; dip his Bit in Beer and put on his Bridle, dress him and cleanse him in all Parts, if the Weather be cold, have a large strong Body-cloth of Kersey, but in warm Weather Cotton, or such light Musters will do, (for in Heats you must be very careful he take no Cold or Sufteit) fold this well about his Body-place on his Saddle, being close the foremost Girt, but the other leave so loose as to thrust a Whip between it and the Horse's Body; let your Breast-cloth cover his Shoulders, and wathing his Mouth with Beer, leave him for an Hour, then lead him forth and Rack him gently in even Ground a Mile or more, then Gallop moderately up some Hill, to Rack or Walk him down again, then Cool him a little, and ride him to some pleasant River or Spring, and let him Drink, which if he refuses, Exercise him again till he will do it; When he has drank, Rack him Home and put him cool into the Stable fresh Littered, having first, if possible, made him ou the foul out-cast Litter void his Urine and Dung.

Being in the Stable, tye him to the Rack, and with hard Whips let his Legs be rubbed down, and all his Parts the like, taking off his Saddle, and cloathing him warmer or lighter, as the Season requires, so whip him round, cleanse his Feet and throw into the Rack a knop of Hay well dusted, to tear whil's he stands on his Bridle, which may be half an Hour; then give him a Quart of the whiteft and heaviest Oats, and if he seem desirous of more, you may give him another like quantity, then leave him to his Rest till eleven a Clock; then Visit again, and rub him over gently, give him three Pints of the like Oats, and close the Stable as dark as may be; at two Hours end Visit him again with the like quantity of Oats as before, Rub him

gently and remove the Excrements; give him a Bottle of Hay, and leave him for three Hours more, if in Summer; but if in Winter, only two and an half; then wash his Mouth and the Muzzle of his Bridle with Beer; Saddle him and bring him forth, having well rubbed him down, then endeavour to make him empty on the old Litter. Ride him forth and give him gentle Breatheings by some pleasant River or Meadow, that he may take delight in it, but upon a fell Strenuous Gallop have not up a Hill, lest it endanger his Wind: heat him both before and after Water, and in the approach of Dark, bring him home; so by early and late Airings, the Soulders will be diminished, and the gross Humours dispersed: Use him in Stabling as before, and visit him three Hours after with a like quantity of Oats; tolls up his Litter and let him rest till Morning.

Things proper to be avoid in Horses, &c.

Two Heats in a Week, if they be thorow ones, are sufficient for any State of Body. If the Match be made for Running on a *Turfday*, then let the Heating days be *Turfdays* and *Saturdays* in each Week, and the Greatest on the *Turfday*, but in rainy flabby Weather you may shift these days, and chuse those that are fair: or the hours in those days may be changed where necessity requires it: If the Weather be dull, heavy, dripping or cold, it will be convenient when abroad, to have a Hood with large Ears on your Horse, to keep out the Rain or Damp, the Nape of it thickned with a Lineing, that the Wet may not easily penetrate, lest the wet falling on his Ears, Neck, or Fillers subject him to Diseases, and hinder his Performance: carry him never to Heats before day, nor keep him out after it is dark.

Rules for the second Fortnight's Keeping

Use him in Littering and Dressing as before, only what Hay he has let him take it out of your Hand to be the more familiar; when he has eaten his portion of Oats, Bridle him, Ride out, Air and Water him, as in the foregoing Fortnight; and when you return, you may give him near

three pints of Oats; let him take Hay out of your Hand, Litter him well, and so leave him and order him as before: Then observe to make him a Diet-Bread in the following manner.

Grind three Pecks of *Bass* with one of *Wheat*, Jeeft them through an indifferent fine Rag to a fine Flower, then put Ale Yeft and fair Water to make the Dough; Kneed it exceeding firm, then let it ly till it rife and become Light, then Kneed it again and make it into six penny Louves, let them soak well in an Oven, and being hot, turn the Bottoms uppermost and let them cool, and three days after Baking, use them in the following order.

Cut the Bread into thin flivers, and lay it a while to dry, curble it small among the Oats, and give it the Horse, not exceeding a pound to half a peck of Oats: This do first in the Morning, and about Eleven repeat it again, then let him rest two Hours, and feed him then the like again; and so at distane spaces, as his Appetite left serves him, keeping every thing clean about him: Let his Heats, Alvings and Waterings be the same, make in foul Weather, as I have said; but when he is led to his Heats, give him Oats only, and when he is returned and Foul, put on his Muzzle wash'd in Beer. This use of the Muzzle is to prevent the Horse from feeding on his Litter, biting or gawing the Rack-blaves or Mainger, licking Loam, and many other Inconveniences: They may be made of Leather, Pack-thread, or double Canvas, tho the latter with Lattice is preferable, the Leather being the worse, by reason of its Scent; yet these must be kept clean, lest offensive smell nauseate and ficken the Horse's Stomach.

For the rest of this Fornight, observe he be duly Classified, and Dieted as is requisite according to the Session; then put a new-laid Egg whole into half a pint of new Ale, and oblige him to swallow it, to lead him forth, and cause him to Empty by fumelling to the Litter or old Dung, which will oblige him to it; then Rack him gently for a Mile or two, so by degrees mend his pace till he come to a full Speed, and bring him to the Starting-post, if any such be appointed, or if none, then to some other Post near the place where the Race is to be performed, then

18 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

alight, take off the Body and Breast-cloath, place on the Saddle, Mount him, let him smell to, and grow Familiar with the Post, as-likewise to the wagling-post, and so run him three quarters Speed, from the beginning of the designed Race, to the end, if you find he will endure it without pain or los of Wind; but if it be Irksome to him, then slacken your pace, and by degrees he will come to it with Delight; and particularly runmark on what Ground he most naturally affects to run, whether Soft, Hard, Smooth, Hilly, Dauk or Dry, and make it to your advantage in the Race.

This done, bring him under some Hay or Corn Rick, Hedge, Pit, or dry Ditch, and there scrape off the Sweat with your Glazing-knife, rub his Ears, Head and Crest, clasp on his Cloaths and the Saddle on them, and ride him gently so that he may cool before you bring him to the Stable, but keep such a pace that he may not cool too fast, or all on a sudden: Having Stabled him, tye his Head to the Rack, and having the following Scouring in readiness, give it him as shall be directed.

First Scouring.

Take an Ounce and six Grains of the transparentest *Rasch-Allem*, a platt of *Maisza*, in which dissolve the *Allem*; to these put three ounces of *Olive Oil* very sweet, mix them well together with an ounce and an half of Brown Sugar-candy in Powder, these set on a gentle Fire till pretty hot, and upon the Horse's return from the first thorough Heat, give it him in a Drenching-horn, and it will infallibly bring away the Molton Grease and bad Humours, or other Obstructions that remain in the Body, and wou'd make him unfit for this Exercise.

Directions to Order him after the taking this.

When you have given the Horse this Scouring, rub him well all over with Whips and a Curry-comb; follow these with a Brush, and dust him well, then rub him with a dry Cloath till no Sweat appears; put his Cloath on again,

again, and truis under the Cloath warm Wraps, let him fast for the space of two Hours, and keep him in continual motion that he sleep not, that the Humours may disperse and evacuate, then give him a handful of Wheat-cars: If upon handling him under the Ears and near the Heart, you perceive no more Sweat arises, but if he be faint or fiddish, after the expiration of the time, toll up his Litter, take off his Bridle, and let him rest for the space of two Hours, and he will be well again, then give him Wheat-cars gradually, and rub him down; after that, let him feed on Hay out of your Hand, and an hour after crum three shivers of the Bread mentioned, with a quart of Oats and a pint of sylit Beans: let him rest after this three Hours; that expired, Visit him again, and before you Dre's him, give him a like quantity of Oats, Beans and Bread, then ride him, his Cloathing being on, a little way, but suffer him not to Water till about an hour and an half after; then wash a pint of Oats in Beer and give them to Cool him, and in so ordering leave him till Morning with a little Hay, and continue after, his usual Feedings and gentle Breathings.

Thus having ordered him, observe the other three Heating days, to improve his Speed, and give him the aforesaid Scowring, and he will be very Pleasant and Lightion.

The third Fortnight how to Order him.

Having thus far proceeded, mingle half a Bushel of the best Wheat, and a like quantity of Beans, gynd them very small, so that the Flower be finer than the former, and make it up into Loaves the same way, and it being Baked, after three days cut the Crust away, slice it out and crumble it as before with Oats and Beans the same quantity, and let the Feeding be as in the foregoing Fortnight, yet his Heats must be more moderate, lest you overstrain him; omit likewise the Scowring, not giving any more after his Heats, lest being empty of Humours, his Body open cold and watery Humours at his Vents and Pores; but when at any time he is moderately heated, bring him home and cool him by gentle Racking before he comes to the

46 **The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.**

the Stable, giving him Cordial Balls according to the following Receipt.

Cordial Balls for the third Fortnight.

Take *Certhamus Seets*, *Ansi-seeds*, *Fennel-seeds*, *Elecampan Roots* and *Culpeper Lemes*, each two Ounces, dry them well, that when bruised, they may become a Powder, sift it through a Lawn Sieve, add two Ounces of the Flower of *Briony*, an Ounce of *Licorice* Take, put them into a pint of *White-wine*, Chymical Oil of *Aniseed*, *Sugar* in *Syrup*, and *Salvia-Oil*, ev'ry half a pint, and being well mingled, mix them with so much Wheat-flower as they may reduce it to a Paste; make it up into Balls as big as Green Wall-nuts, or Balleys-eggs; these encrease his Wind, expel Cold, purge away Molten Grease, and produce good sound Flesh; he may take one of these in the Morning, and another at Night, whole, or dissolved in a pint of warm *ale*.

Pastes for the fourth and last Fortnight.

* This requires more Caution than any of the precedents; let his Bread therefore be finer than any hitherto, thru pecks of Wheat to a peck of Peas, and Soulded as fine as ~~can~~ be; make it up with the Whites of twenty Eggs, and New-milk instead of Water, let the Oats you give him with it be well Winnowed and Sifted, and the split Peas clear from Hairs, tho the quantity you give him may not differ from what has been Directed. In the first Week keep the Heating days as before, but in the next, which is the last, bite one of them, so that he may for five days be at ease, to recover his Spirits and Strength, yet you may give him considerable Aatings to keep his Wind in good Length, however, give him no Scouring, but the better to expel the Fumes or Vapours, burn *Albany Sassafras*, or *Frankfiffees*, in the Stable, when close shut, on a Chafing-dish of Charcoal; sometimes sprinkle a little *Musk-adam* on his Meat, at least twice a day, and give him once a day half a pint of that Wine, with the whites of two or three Eggs.

Eggs beaten in it, omitting the Hay, unless a small quantity after his Heating.

The Muzzle may be laid aside the last Week, unless the three days before he Runs, except he be a foul Feeder, and prove to eat his Litter, &c. Let him be well fed before and after Airing.

The day before the Wager is to be run, Water as sparingly, yet a fourth part of his Meat must be withheld, and in your Evening Airing bring him home sooner than usual, even before Sun-set, and this day let him be well Shoo'd, and every thing that is necessary done to him, that nothing may be new to him, or trouble him the day he is to Run.

On the Morning the Match is to be run, come Early to him, take off his Muzzle and rub him well, especially his Head, Ears, Neck and Withers; make him a Wash with *Muscadine*, Bran, Oats and Bread, made as directed; if he refuses this, give him dried Oats, and after them a pint of *Muscadine*, with three new-laid *Eggs* in it, then wash his Muzzle with the fine Wine, lead him out, and endeavour all you can to make him Empty; lead him among Breaks, Stubble, or the like, let him smell to old Dung, &c. which will provoke him to it, which emptying is a great advantage in Running: You must bring him covered, his Saddle and Girths lightly on him, that he may not feel any weight; wash his Mouth if he foam, and gently cherish him with your Hand and Voice, &c.

Note. If you are to Ride with a Person, who by reason of his being Lighter than your self, or who gives you any advantage that there must be Way-bits in the cage, be sure to order them that you are not deceived in the Management; so make your Agreement if you can, That he who Rides against you, carries not the Weights in his Saddle, for then they are in a manner as if he carry'd none, and the Disadvantage is yours, for they neither dis-advantage, the Horse nor Rider, unless great Odds be given in the weight of the Riders, which seldom happens; but if he carry them about him, then is the Advantage much to your purpose, for they will both hinder the Horse and his Management.

62 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

As for the Ground, you must (as I hinted) observe which your Horse takes best when you give him his Heats and Airings, and in the Race chuse the most agreeable, as well as the Place and opportunity will give you leave, but throw not your self out in being too Curious in this matter if it be not easily gain'd from those that ride with you, for by such Niceties may have lost topping Matches.

Stars, Snips and Blazes for the Beautifying a Horse, how to make them.

To make a white Star, Snip or Blaze, in a white or Sorrel Horse, cut a piece of Lead flattered and smoothed proportionable to your Fancy, then the Hair being shaved off in the place intended, open the Skin with a Lancet, so hollow that you may thrust the Lead in when dipped in *Spike Oil*, close it up and Anoint it with Oil of *Mallards* and *Commonit*, laying over it a Plaister of Bees-wax; when it has been there four days, take the Lead out, clap the skin clothe and Anoint it as before, and when the Hair (which it will soon do) grows again, it will be Milk-white.

Red Stars on a white Horse are done in the like manner, in forming your Lead, shaving and opening the Skin; but you must use to cause the Colour, Oil of *Cassia*, *Soot* and *Vermilion*, finely tempered together, and the Lead anointed with it: Take out the Lead at the same days as the former, and anoint the sore place with Ointment of *Tobacco* and *Marsh-Mallows*.

A black Star in a white Horse, make as the White, only the Ingredients must be *Sealiers Ink*, or *Lamb-black* and Oil of *Tartar*; and in this manner you may make Feathers or Marks on any part of the Body for Beauty and Ornament, tho too frequently used by some, who do it by way of Disguise, that a Horse ill come by, may not be Discovered. And thus one Star, Snip or Blaze may be taken out, and one of a different Colour put in.

Things to be observed when you put your Horse to Graft.

Having spoken many times about dry Feeding, it will not be amiss for the Horse-man to know how he should be Ordered at Grafts for his Health sake, and to keep a comely proportion of Body, for in the knowledge of this there's much Advantage.

When he has stood in the House and you intend him for Grafts, abate or change his Cloaths, putting him on daily thinner, that by degrees he may be weaned from them, and in the end, wearing none, take no notice of it, or be prejudiced with Cold or blasts of Wind abroad.

This done, let him Blood twice or thrice, there being a day or two's respite between; give him heartning Meats; by degrees lessen his Allowance; and in the end let him for two or three days before you send him out, feed on Hay alone, and put not any valuable or tender Horse into wet Pastures, where Foggs, Damps, and unwholesom Airs arise, from Fens, Marshes, Ditches, Rivers, Bogs, or the like. However, the better to fortifie him against Sicknes or Lamenes, give him the following Drink very warm three Mornings and Evenings.

The Drink to be given before Graft.

Take *Bay-berries*, *Myrrh*, *Gentian*, *Aristolochia*, and the shavings of *Ivory*, each an Ounce, bruise them when dried, so that they may be reduced to Powder; give him half an Ounce at a time in *Muscadine*, *Malago*, or for want of it, sweet *Wort*, a quart of either pretty warm.

Thus having fitted him for the Field, put him out in a warm dry day, that the cold weather may feize on him by degrees, so that shutting the Pores, he may be hardened against it with little damage to himself.

How the Horse is to be used when taken from Graft.

Observe in taking him up you do it in a dry day, the Horse by the Heat and Air freed from damps or wet; and this.

64. The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

this is best done about Barbadoes Tide at farthest, unless the Weather be exceeding clear and warm, and then he may run to the first of September, but not conveniently longer; and for a Week or two after taken up, give him no immoderate Heats, nor over Travel him, lest you melt his Grease, for the Fat gotten at Grafts is exceeding tender and apt to be dissolved by any violent Motion, whereby the Blood happen to be inflamed, it will endanger his falling into mortal Sickness: A day after he is Stabled, bring him forth into the Air and bled him well; cleanse his Feet, and Shoe him well, and give him the Drink in proportion before prescribed for going to Grafts.

Other material Directions.

Three days after your Horse is taken from Grafts, if the Weather be fair, ride him abroad, and after a gentle Heat, bring him home, smooth down his Hairs and sleek them with Soap rubbed in the Palms of your Hands, but let not any Soap get into his Eyes, Nostrils, or Mouth, cleanse him then with some warm Water and a linen Cloath; after that dry him well with a woollen Clooth till no wet remain about him; And being thus cleansed from Dust and Filth, cover him as warm as is usual in cold weather, and this will make him Slick and Lively, and seem not to be the same Horse, for his colour will be somewhat altered.

Blood-letting, as what occasions it ought to be used.

Opening the Temple-Veins is proper to ease pains in the Head, if caused by cold Rheums, Fevers, Drowndings, Slavers, Distempers in the Eyes, and other Maladies proceeding from afflictions of the Brain or any swellings, or Inflammations about the Head, or Throat; and for these you may give him some of the Blood to drink mixed with Bay-salt. Opening the weeping Veins under the Ear is very proper to prevent Blindness, and cure Distempers in the Eyes: Opening the Pallite Veins prevents or cures the *Lampos*, *Slavers*, *Yellow*, *Drowsiness*, *Surfet*, *Tiring*, &c. The Vein on the side of the Neck is proper to disburthen the Body of gross Blood, ease the Heart of

Surfet, Antic, Faiming, and the like: Opening the Breast Vein is proper for *Moor-standing*, occasion'd by molten Grease, contracted in the Body by hard Riding, preventing Diseases in the Liver, Lungs, and other internal Parts, and is convenient to be done in any sprain or hurt in the Shoulder, to prevent Lancets,

Opening the Thigh Veins prevents Foundring in the fore Feet. Screwzing-bone, Mallender, or the like excreficial Intimities. To bleed on the four Shuckle-Veins before, is good against the Crown-scab, Quitter-bone, &c. To open the Spur-veins is good against Moor foundring, Farcine in the Side, swelling under the Belly, or the like. The Toe Veins being opened, help Fretting-foundring, Hoof-bound, or any grief occasioned by the beating the Horse's Hoof upon any hard stony way.

The bleeding the two Thigh Veins behind, ease grief in the Kidneys, swelling in the hinder Legs, Swellings, Scratches, pissing Blood, Foundring, &c. To open the Shoulder Veins behind, prevents pain in the Feet, Foundring, Uneasiness, &c. Open the Flank Veins in case of a Fever, swelling of the Stones, Poorness, or the Tielet-Worm.

The Tail Vein opened, prevents the Mange, Scab, Itch, and falling off of the Hair. And these Blood-lettings prepare a Horse or Mare the better for Phyfick, and greatly enlivens him.

What Season is best to let Blood in.

If present danger require letting Blood, you may waive Critical times and do it immediately, otherwise observe the following days, viz.

The Third and Fifteenth of *January*. The Fourth and Ninth of *Febrary*. The Sixth and Tenth of *March*. The Fifteenth and Twentieth of *April*. The First and Thirteenth of *May*. The Fifteenth and Nineteenth of *June*. In *July* and *August*, forbear letting Blood, unless on some urgent occasion. In *September*, bleed the Eleventh and Twenty eighth. *October*, the Eighth, and Twenty third. *November*, the Fifth and Sixteenth. And in *December*, the Fourteenth,

Fourteenth, Sixteenth and Twenty fifth. These days by the most Skilful, are held to be safer and better than others in sundry regards, but especially in that of the Signs, who then Govern.

Viz. *Aries*, the Head; *Taurus*, the Neck; *Gemini*, the Shoulders; *Cancer*, the Stomach; *Leo*, the Heart; *Virgo*, the Guts and Belly; *Libra*, the Reins and Buttocks; *Scorpio*, the privy Members; *Sagittarius*, the Thighs; *Capricorn*, the Knees; *Aquarius*, the Legs, and *Pisces*, the Feet. From which, Note, that it is not at any time safe to let Blood in that part at the time the Sign is predominant or governing in it.

Obstructions of a Horse, as to the Arteries, Sinews, Veins, relating to Health, Strength, &c.

He that will be expert in Ordering a Horse, must not be unskillful in knowing the parts from whence Defects and Diseases chiefly arise; the most material I shall briefly Enumerate.

First. Consider the Seat of Life to be in the Brain, Heart and Liver, from whence it contributes to, and disposes every Member, and for that cause, those are called the Three principal Members; to which, some would add a Fourth, *viz.* The Stones: But that Addition by the wilful Practitioners has been rejected, because if taken away, Life still remains, which it is impossible to do if any of the other be removed.

Secondly. The Sinews, which are these, *viz.* Two white Sinews or Tendons, beginning at the Moie and passing through the Neck and Back, branch into the fore Legs, and end in the hinder Legs, taking their Ligaments in all the four Feet. Two Sinews called the main Sinews, which descend from the Brain, and passing down the Cheeks, fasten the Jaws. Three from the Shoulder to the first Joynt of the Arms or fore-Legs, besides two other great Sinews. Four great Sinews from the Knees to the Pasterns, with the same number in the hinder part above. As well within as without the fore part of the Breast, are ten Sinews small and great. From the Reins of the Back to the

Stomach.

Stones, are four great Sinews or Ligaments, and another great Sinew running to the end of the Tail. To conclude, a Horse has great and small, Twenty Nine; or as some will have it, Thirty.

Thirdly. The Veins through which the Blood Circulates the whole Body, are many; yet seeing they centre in the Liver, the Seat and Fountain of Blood, distributing it into every part, divers are of opinion, that all other Veins in the Horse's Body, are but branches of the *Milieu Vein*, proceeding directly from the Liver, and when ever that is afflicted with Wind, has the Blood corrupted in it, or is subject to any other Infirmity, it afflicts all at once, the whole Body of the Horse.

Those Branches that ascend to the Head and upper parts of the Body, are called *Affendants*; and those that run down into the Legs and other parts of the Body, *Defendants*: And through their branches, sleeping and waking, the Blood continues its Course, Ebbing and Flowing like the Ocean, by the course of the Moon.

The things herein chiefly to be considered, are the Branches properly to be opened, as I have directed in Blood-letting, Page 64.

The Bones that frame a Horse's Body, their Number, and how they are Placed.

In the Body of a Horse, the Bones, not accounting the Teeth, which are visible, thus are Numbered, viz.

His Head-bones, comprehending the Crooks and handle of Skull, are (although they are compiled of parts and parcels of other Bones) likewise two flat handles, which form the Pallate and Fork, or Throat, have Five. His Breast-bone and his Chine, Fifty two other Bones. His Ribs, long and short, are Thirty six. His fore-Legs and fore-Feet, contain Forty four. The hinder Legs and Feet, Forty. So that the whole Structure of the Body of a Horse, comprising his Teeth, consists of 177 Bones.

Of the four Humours in the Body of a Horse, &c.

As Fire, Air, Water and Earth produce and give Life and Nutriment to all Living Creatures, so the Humours viz. Choler, Blood, Phlegm, and Melancholly, are the principal Agitators in the Bodies of all Creatures, and as it were Conjurors, or at least Preserve them: Choler, by reason of its heat being alluded to Fire: Phlegm, by reason of its Moisture and Coldness, to Water: Blood, by reason of its heat and Moisture, to Air: And Melancholly, through its cold and dryness, to Earth.

The Choler has its Seat near the Liver, which by reason of its heat and dryness accords with the Blood which has its Fountain in the Liver, and from thence disperseth it self through the Body.

Phlegm has its chief Seat about the Brain, which is the principal Seat of Life, and frequently afflicts when out of temper, with Rheums, Colds, Coughs, Catarrhs, &c.

Melancholly has its Seat about the Spleen, being the gross and earthly part of the Blood and Choler. As for the Offices and Dispositions of these Humours, they are four viz.

Choler causeth Concoction and voiding of Excrements; Blood Nourisheth the Body; Phlegm giveth Motion to the Joyns; and Melancholly disposeth to Appetite, Creating a good Stomach.

The Humours or Constitution of a Horse's Body to be taken from the Colour, &c.

The Humours are to be known, that a Farrier or an skilful Horse-Doctor may the better prepare the Medicines which I am hereafter to prescribe; and this may be done divers ways, and particularly by the Colour of a Horse sympathizing with the Humours; viz.

If a Horse be Cole-black, and has nothing of changeable about him, then Choler is predominant in him; and by reason of the great heat in him, he is incident to Inflammations of the Liver, Yellows, and Pestilential Fevers; and in that case he must have suitable Medicines to allay Heat, and

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 69

purge out the superfluities of *Choler*; yet these Medicines must not be of a quality too much operating, lest they impair his Strength; for the cholerick Horse, though he be fierce and fiery, has nevertheless no great Strength.

If your Horse be Dark or bright Bay, neither scouling Countenance, bad Mouthed, white Flanked, white Fleabitten, white Lyard like, Silver or Black with a white Star, white Raib, with a black Foot; then he is Sanguine, and the Diseases to which he is most subject, are the Consumption of the Liver, Glanders, Leyrose, and such other Distempers caused by Infection. Those of this Complexion are very strong, and will endure strong Medicine without impairing strength. If these Medicines are not compounded of extraordinary hot Ingredients, to over-heat the Blood.

If your Horse be perfect White, Yellow, Dun, Kite-colour, Mous-dun, or the like in mixture, then is the prevailing Humour in him *Phlegm*; and such are flow of Nature, subject to lose his Flesh, also to cold Rheums, Head-Ach, Coughs, Staggers, and many other Distempers proceeding from cold watry Distillations; and therefore he must have hot Medicines, *viz.* Simples of a hot and strong working nature, that may effectually operate on the Mals of *Phlegm*.

If of a dark Bay colour, having long white Hairs, called Goats-hairs, on his Legs, Ruffet, Chestnut, Ash-coloured, or Gray; Then *Melancholy* is predominant, and his Distempers are Inflammations of the Spleen, Frenzies, and other the like dull and Melancholy Distempers, and Require cold and moist Medicines; for those of a hot or drying quality, are very hurtfull.

These Horses are very strong, though they appear not so; and consequently, are fit for servile Labours; and when you find a Horse mixed with many, or all of these Colours, then he, little or more, (as the Colours are more or less on him of one or the other kind) participates of the Humours; and Medicines must be tempered accordingly; as also to the Nature of the Sickness, if it has continued long, and he is enfeebled thereby, then you must not give him over-strong Potions: but more of Medicines hereafter.

How to prepare a Horse to receive Medicines, if any Disease has seized him.

Observe twenty four hours before you intend to administer the Medicine, (whether Powder, Pills, or Drench, composed of Simple, &c.) that you restrain him from eating Hay or Straw, or any hard Meats that admit not of easy Digestion, thereby to hinder the Operation of the Physick; and for twelve hours before keep him fasting, for the Emptiness of Stomach gives a free Operation to any Purgative, when Fulness hinders greatly the working of any Medicine, much obstructing it, and thereby frequently injuring the Horse, by turning the force of it on the Vitals.

The safest Meat to prepare him in, either *Rye* or *Wheat-Bray* mixed with white Split Beans, Wheat-flower mixed with white Oats, and his Drink, warm Water; into which dust a little fine Bran.

What Purgations, with the least Danger, may be given to a Horse.

The most Effectual and gentlest Purgations are Pills; but it must be considered, as is said, according to the state of the Horse's Body; And, for Example, to make the gentlest Pill against Pestilential or Infectious Diseases.

Peel twenty Cloves of Garlick, bruise and well temper them with a pound of fresh-Butter, Roll them up in Balls as big as Walnuts, give four or five of them, one soon after another; and if the Contagion have not seized the Heart, Brain, or Liver, it will work it out.

Approved Rates to be observed by such as either Travel or Exercise Horses; for want of the due Observation whereof, many excellent Horses have been lost; though hereby they may be less from Sickness.

First, when your Horse is lusty, pleasant and clear in Body, then he is fit for Labour or any Exercise; but if he be sad, heavy, or dejected in Countenance, do not Labour him until you have found the Cause, and removed it. Secondly, let not your Horse eat any thing for two or three hours before you travel him, and then not much until you come to your Lodging; for baiting at Noon is naught

naught and hurtful, except you rest four or five hours, so as that he may not travel upon a full Stomach, and let his Bait be small, and be sure he never wear a ruffly Bit or Snaffle, for fear of the Canker. Thirdly, let your Travel be moderate, except necessity (which cannot be limited) enforce you ; then be sure not to let your Horse either eat or drink until he be very cold ; and if it be in Winter-time, be sure to cloath his Head and Breast very warm after your Travel ; and every Morning either squirt a little Vinegar into his Nostrils, or else rub them with Oyl of Bay, with a Cloath pointed therewith fastned to the end of a Stick, and thrust up and down his Nostrils to purge his Head. Fourthly, neither wash nor Water your Horse (especially in the Winter-time) for when he is very hot, to walk him in the cold Air is dangerous, and washing is a speedy Preparative to bring him to some dangerous Disease ; for there is no desperate Disease incident to a Horse, but the same proceeds from the Causes of too much Heat or Cold ; and none more dangerous then this. Fifthly, when you travel, alight often from your Horse (if Cause of Necessity enforce not the contrary) and lead him to some place of Grafs, Straw, or Brakes, and there stay and whittle until your Horse Piss, which he will hardly do except it be in such places, because the sprinkling of his Water will scald his Legs. Sixthly, if your Horse be very hot, let him not drink cold Water, but rather at some Houle give a quart of good Beer, or a pint of Wine ; and if you do Water him by the way, let him not drink till he have washed his Mouth, which is done when he draweth his Head into the Water, presently pull up his Head which will cleanse his Mouth ; and if you are forced to let him drink, ride him so that he may be sure to keep the same Heat he was in when he did drink. Seventhly, After his Labour, if you can have a convenient place, let him wallow himself, for it is no less delightful then comfortable to his Body. Eighthly, If he happen to fall sick in your Travel (which proceeds commonly either from eating or drinking too much at a time, or otherwise) give him a pint of Sack or Madeira, a quarter of a pint of Aquavit, with six penny worth of the best Treacle and a quart

ter of a pint of the best *Oil of Oil*, brew them well together, and give him a draught, and then take a new Lad Egg, and pull out his Tongue, bruise the Shell, and thrust it into his Throat, and then let go his Tongue; do this twice, then let him Blood in the Pallet of his Mouth, and rub it well with Salt, and afterwards order him as he should be in the Stable.

Another Excellent way, to the like purpose.

If you cannot get Sack-Wine, or Treacle, give him a pint of *Aqua-Vite*, or any other comfortable Water, with two Eggs, in the form aforesaid, to comfort his Heart. *First*, at night give him a good comfortable Mash, if he will eat it, and clean sweet Provender, such as he will eat; bathe his Legs with Butter and Beer, clean his Feet, and stop them with *Cow-Jung*, and after he is sufficiently fed, give him plenty of Sweet Litter, shut him dark in the Stable, and early in the Morning let him be thoroughly dressed and rubbed, and before you ride, two hours, let him eat half a Peck of old sweet *Oats*, with a pint of the strongest Ale, Beer, Malmsey, or White-Wine for his Breakfast. *Secondly*, If your Horse be young, that you do travel upon (which is the Overthrow of all fine mottled Horses) when you come home, and may let him rest, then let him take his Ease and bleed him; and if you find his Blood hot and dark coloured, spare not to let him bleed until then come perfect Blood; after three or four days keep him with good Mashers, and give him the purging Drink before mentioned, with a pint of White-Wine, an ounce of *Alles* dissolved into powder, half an ounce of *Agaric*, and a spoonful of the Powder of *Liquorice*, made blood warm, and well brewed together, and let him not drink cold Water for four or five days after, and in his Provender put the Powder of *Brimstone*, *Eruct Campana*, and *Purpura* of the Oak, well mingled together, a spoonfull at a time, two or three hours before his Watering, and with he will remain a healthful and sound Horse, if he be thus used till he be eight years old; for then the chief Danger is past.

*The Order of Curing Horses that are
Diseased: The Causes, the Signs,
and the Cures thereof.*

Of the Ague or Fever in Horses.

THE Learned do hold Three genial Kinds: First, When the Vital Spirits are inflamed, wherein heat is predominant more than Nature requireth. Secondly, When the Humours are distempered by heat. Thirdly, When the firm parts of the body are continually hot, so that the *Ague* cometh by the excessive heating of the Horse, and thereupon a sudden Cold, or by fulness of bad Humours, which principally grow from foul, full, and raw feeding, and too much rest; and for that reason it taketh the Horse either hot or cold, and to keep due hours to make him shake and tremble as a Man; also we may know how the same appeareth from the Inflammations of the Stomach, which scaldeth and maketh the Tongue raw; there are other causes, viz. by spare feeding, not clean feeding, and dry feeding, and for want of moderate labour. The Cure shall be when you perceive his dejected Countenance, and that he beginneth to tremble, enforce him into a Heat, and give him this purging Drink: Take a quart of *White-wine*, and thereinto an Ounce of *Ators* small beaten: Of *Agarick* half an Ounce, of *Liquorice* and *Aussifreds* half a Drachm, and some *Honey* warmed a little on the Fire; and then Pisse him until he be hot, and let him sweat moderately to the Stable, and take a special care of him; wash his Tongue and straw to eat, and a Gallon of old sweet Oats; at Nighe give him a good Mash, and the next Nighe after let him drink a quart; and if his Blood be very thick, dark, yellow,

low, let him bleed two Quarts, and afterwards keep him warm from the Air for Three or Four Days, and give him warm Water to drink, and a little *Saint-Oyl* in it, if he will drink it.

An other of the same.

Let him bleed, take of *Germender* Four Ounces, of *Gam-braguet*, and of dead *Rets*, of each an ounce: Of *Oyle Olive* Four Ounces; put them into a quart of strong *Ale*, and give it warm to the Horse to drink, then ride him until he sweat, and cloath him, and keep him warm as aforesaid.

Of the Ague in the Head.

The cause of this Disease, proceeds either from cold, or taking of too much heat, or of a raw imperfect Digestion of the Stomach, which proceeds principally also from full and foul feeding; for betwixt the Stomach and the Brain is such Affinity, as that they do equally communicate their damages: The Signs are these; The hanging down of his Head, his Eyes will swell and run with Water, and he will forsake his Meat. The Cure is, to let him bleed in the Pallet of his Mouth, and rub it with Salt to make it bleed well; then take a Stick with a Linen-cloath fastened to the end of it, well anointed with the Oyl of *Bay*, thrust it up and down his Nostrils, thereby to open and purge his Head: Also perfume him with the fineoak of *Gavioe* stalks broken into small pieces: Also air him with the fineoak of *Franchuise*, holding the same in a Chafingdish under his Nostrils, with a great Cloath cast over his Head, and let it be done Morning and Evening: Keep him with sparse Dyet and moderate Exercise, the which will cleanse his Stomack, and make it empty, then his brain will not be disquieted. Afterwards let him bleed, and give him good Mashes to drink for two days, and no cold water; as I shall write down the Causes of some Diseases that are most unknown to the people; so far those that they are so well acquainted with, I shall only set down the Cures.

Of the sudden Sickness of a Horse.

The cause is, for that the Heart, which is the Chariot of Life, wherein the Soul of the Horse liveth, wanting the use of the Veins and Arteries, to carry the vital spirit of heat to all the parts of the body, to give the Horse feeling and ability to operation, by reason of some obstructives of Humours and Cold, which for want of heat cannot be dissolved, for that the nature of cold is to bind and conglutinate together, and keep them from their natural Course, proceeding from some violent Exercise, and immoderate Feeding and Rest. The sign is, the sudden dejection of his Countenance. The Cure is, to let him bleed on both fides of the breast, next the heart, whereby the Veins and Arteries being evacuated and emptied, they may begin to do that office whereunto Nature hath appointed them: Let him bleed the quantity of two quarts; then give him a comfortable drink, to stir up the vital Spirits to action, w^t. Take a quart of the best Sack, and burn it with *Grains*, *Cloves* and *Cinnamon*, and a quarter of a pound of the best *Sager*, and burn it altogether with half a point of *Sallet-Oyl*, and Four pennyworth of the best *Treacle*, then ride him very gently till he begin to sweat, and so turn him into the Stable, and let him stand six Meats, but beware you do for him there, according to your direction, and be sure you cloath him not too warm, for the Drink will throughly warm him and make him sweat; let his drink be warm water, wherein boyl *Mallows*, and a handful of *Water-Cress*, of *Fennel* and *Parly-lett*, of each an Ounce, and twice in a Morning or Evening, when he is most fasting, ride him gently a mile or two.

Of a Horse that cannes Piss.

Take a Pint of white *Piseger*, half a pound of *Gingers*, bruise it small, and wring out the Juice, take a handful of *Root*, a handful of *Fox-glover*, the Leaves or the Flowers, two ounces of *Grommel-seed*, and half a pint of sweet *Whey*, stamp them well together, and strain them into *Piseger*, let him stand without Meat and Drink Twenty Four hours.

Of the pain in the Head.

Take a point of *Marsay*, Five new laid Eggs, a head of bruised *Garlick*, small *Potter*, *Cinnamon*, and *Nutmeg* beaten fine, give it him to drink three days together, and let him fast five hours after.

To bring Hair again.

To bring Hair again, take the Dung of *Cows*, some *Hemp* and *Almonds*, and the blood of a *Hog*, boyl them together, and being hot, rub the place therewith.

Of the Stone and Chalick in a Horse.

Take a pint of *White-Wine*, half a pint of *Burr-Seed*, and beat them small, two ounces of *Parfry-Seed*, half a handful of *Hop*, half a handful of new-set *Leeks*, and half a handful of *Water-Cresses*, half an ounce of *Black-Soap*, and mingle them together, sharp and strain them, but put the *Burr-Seed* and *Parfry-Seed* to it after it is strained, and then warm it, and give it him to drink.

Of killing the Fire, either in Burning or Sha.

Take *Varnish*, or *Oyl* and *Water* beaten together, and moisten the place with a Feather.

Of a Horse that flambeth, which is called the Cords.

This is called the Cords: The Cord is a Sinew that breedeth amongst the Sinews, the one end cometh down to the shankle Vein, and so up thorough the Leg, goeth over the inner fide of the Knee, and so over the Shoulder, and so along the Neck by the Wefant, and it goeth over the Temples under his Eye, down over the Scout, betwixt both the Nostrils, and the Griffle, there knit the length of an *Almond*; take a sharp knife and cut a slit even at the Top of his Nose, just with the point of the Griffle,

open

open the slit, and you shall perceive a white string, take it up with a Bears Tooth, or a Bucks Horn, that is crooked, or some crooked Bodkin, and twine it about the strait, and cut it asunder ; you may twine it so much as that you may rear his foot from the ground, and then bind up the slit, and anoint it with Butter, and the Horse's ulcers will be cured.

Of the Cox-tyr.

The Cure is, let him bleed abundantly in the Veins that be next to the Sore, then take of *Atton* one pound, of white *Capers* a quartern, and a good handful of *Salt*, boyl them together in fair running water, from a pothe to a quart ; this water being warm, put part thereof into a dish, and with a Clost wash the fasse till it begin for to bleed, and let it dry ; then take of *Black-Sug* one pound, and of *Quicke-Silver* half an ounce, and incorporate them, till the Quicke-Silver be not seen, and always after you have washed the fasse with a slice, cover the Ulcer with this Medicine till it be whole, but be sure still to let the blood be about the Ulcer for many days together, and when it is killed, then cast upon it the powder of unslack'd *Lime*, or of *Briarstone*.

Of the Farcia.

This Ulcer is not unknown to any that have enjoyed Horses, and yet unknown almost to all ; I mean the true cause of this Disease, and the Cure ; some say it is a corruption of Blood, some an outward hurt, as of spur-galling, biting of Ticks, *Hagg-Lice*, or such like ; some say an intimacy breed in the Breast near the Heart, and in the side Vessels and Cod near the Stones, many evil humours congealed together, which afterwards disperse themselves into the Thighs, and sometimes into the Head, and do send forth watry humours into the Nostrils, and then it is called the running *Farcia*. Indeed if the true Cause of a Disease be known, the Disease it self is easily cured. The *Mange*, the *Leprosie*, and this Disease of the *Farcia*, are most pernicious to a Horse, for oftentimes it falleth out that many Horses infected therewith, though they live, and the Dis-

case seemeth to be healed, yet are they rendered of small or no use: For my own part I conjecture the cause of this Disease grows either from abundance of bad Blood, or by a great Dissiper of the Blood, through a violent heat, changed into a sudden cold. To cure this Disease, first let him bleed on both sides of the Neck, three quarts at least, for it is most certain that the Loyns which is then the Fountain of Blood, is corrupted, and so sendeth the fume into every part of the Body, as to become loathsome to behold: Then give him this drink; Take a Gallon of fair water, put into it a good handful of Rue, a good spoonful of Hemp-seed, and a handful of the inner Rinde of green Elder, bruise them in a Morter together, and seeth it till it be half coagul'd, and being cold, give it him to drink: Evermore continue to let him bleed in that Vein which is nearest to the sore place, a great quantity as you see occasion; let his Diet be thin, but very clean and sweet; then take this approved Medicine following; which though the Disease be never so foul it will undoubtedly cure it. Take of Herbsay a handful, Feverfew a handful, of Chick-weed of the house, a handful, of Kikk-weed, a handful, of Heart-Raleys, a handful, keep the residue thereof in a Pipkin close covered in the Earth, stop the mouth thereof cleane with Herb-grass and Duck-leaves, and a green Turf laid upon it, no air to come in, and every third day untye his Ears and dress it, and so continue it till all the Fauces be dead; for undoubtedly at three or four dressings it will kill it; wash all the Herbs so cleane that no dust nor filth be on them: Boyl Chamberlye and Bay-Salt, with a little Capparis and Strong-Nassier to wash the Sores if need be; but beware of burning them either with Fire or other Corrofives, for although it may kill the Ulcer, yet being dispersed, it will burn and scorch the Horses Skin; for burning doth purifie the Skin, and maketh it run together, so as the Horse will never after prosper. I would have you get cases of Leather, faffen'd to a head-stall, made hollow like the shape of a Horses Ears, or make them lank-eared, which thing the Saddlers will help you in; for many times, by long binding the Ears are spoild, so as that they must be cut off.

off. After that you see the filthy Ulcer killed and dead, yet you must know that the Blood is still putrified and corrupted, therefore every Month at least let him blood, but always in several places; and when you see the Blood fine and pure, then give him some good scouring Drink, a quart of *White-wine*, a quarter of an ounce of *Rhubarb* in very thin slices, laid in steep all night; an ounce and a half of *Aliss* in powder dissolved therein, half an ounce of *Agerick*, an ounce of *Sassafras* steeped in the Wine all night, and Three Rases of *Ginger*, sliced and laid also in steep all night, and two ounces of Syrup of *Raisin*, but the *Rhubarb*, *Sassafras*, and *Ginger*, take out of the Wine before you put in the other Simples, and then make it blood warm, and give it the Horse, and so let him rest all that day, giving him nothing but *Wheat-Straw* at night, and the next day following a Pottle of sweet strong *Wine*, and a quarter of a pint of *Brandy*, and keep him warm. After all this wash his Body with *Bucklye*, and *Black-Sap*, and after cloath him and give him a sweat, and he will recover.

Of the Fifth.

This is a filthy Ulcer also, bred from some Ulcer not throughly cured. The Remedy is to search the depth thereof, with a Quill, or some other Instrument of Lead, for unless you find the bottom it is hard to cure, and having found the bottom, if it be in place where you may cut with a Razore, make a slit against the bottom, so wide that you may boldly thrust in your Finger, to feel if any Bone or Grifie be perifled, or spungy, or loote Fleth, which must be gotten out, then boyl a quartern of *Honey*, and an ounce of *Verdegras* in Powder, stirring it continually until it look red, then Tent therewith and Boilier with Flax that it get not out; but if the place be where the Tent cannot conveniently be kept in, linnen on each side of the hole a Shoe-makers Thread over the Boilier, to keep the Tent in, renewing it every day until it leave Mattering, and make the Tent leffer and leffer, and sprinkle thereon a little flackt *Lime*: But if you cannot come to tent it to the bottom, then take strong *Lye*,

80 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

*Henry, Rueb-Alan, Mercury, and sethe them together, and apply them to the bottom of the *Fijlate*. If the *fracture* be in the Head, take the Juice of *Husfins*, and dip a lock of Wool in it, and put the same in his Ears, and use it every day till it be whole.*

These Infirmities are Cured by this following Medicine; all broken Bones, all Bones out of joint, swelling of the Baw, weakness in the Baw, Horse-kippel, Horse-sifid.

The Bones being placed in their true and proper places, according to the form of the member, you shall fill both the grieved place with warm *Paste-graue*, or *Face-graue*, then clap about it a binding Plaster of *Plumb*, *Kaja*, *Maffick*, and *Sallie-Oyl*, well mixed together, and smoken on the Fire; then fold the Limb band about with fine *Flays*, and splint it with broad, fat, strong, and soft Splines, and remove not the dressing for the space of Fifteen days, except that you find the Rowlers to slacken, which is a very good sign, and then you may strain them again, or if you find the Member to increase in swelling, and that the Rowlers grow straiter and straiter, then you may give the Member ease; for it is a sign that it was rowled too strait before, and thus you shall strain it but twice in Thirty days, or thereabouts, in which time the Bones will be knit; but if through the breach of Dislocation, you find any gross substance to appear about the grieved place, then you shall twice or thrice a day bath it with *Paste-graue*, and that will take away the Eye-sore in a short space.

Of Leprosy and universal Mangeris.

The Horse that is infested with this Disease, will be full of *soabs*, *Kawwes*, and *Scurvy*, continually scratching. The Cure is, first for to let him blood on one side of the Neck, and give him a quart of New Milk, and half a handful of the finest powder of *Bringlee*, thoroughly strained together, for that will expel the Manger, in all his Provender and Maffins, continued for Five or Six days, give him *Bringlee* and hot *Gras*; but if he will

not eat it, give it him with *Milk*, and new *Meat*: Then the next day let him blood on the other side of the Neck, at each time a good quantity; within two days after let him blood in the Breast-Veins; within the other two days in the Flank-Veins; within two days after under the Tail, so as that he becomes weak therewith: Keep his blood in a Pail, then mix *Chamber-Salt* and *Bay-Salt* together, and let it be strong of the *Salt*, then take a quantity of the blood and stir them together, that the same be thick, and let him be rubbed all over with a *Feather* when he is hot, and let it dry upon him as much as may be, and the next day more of the same upon the old, that it may be as it were plastered with the same; the which being done in the Sun, will easily be performed. After he hath rested upon the same two days, take *Rocky* and *Black-Soup*, being very warm, and wash all his body, and give him a quart of *Sack*, and half a pint of the best *Treacle* to drink; and anoint his body with this same Ointment in every place. Take of *Long-Oyl* a quart, of fine powder of *Brimstone*, a pint of the best *Treacle* to drink, and anoint his Body with this Ointment in every place.

Another of the same.

Take of *Long-Oyl* a quart, fine powder of *Brimstone* a pint, two pounds of *Black-Soup*, a pint of *Tar*, a pint of *Barrow-Grease*, and so much of *Salt* in the Chimney, as will thicken it; compound them well together, anoint him all over with the same, being very hot, so let it rest till it fall off from him, then when it is all gone, wash him clean with *Salt-suds*, and throughly dry him, then cloath him and put him into a Sweat, and after dry him again, and keep him warm, and he will be in perfect health; and remember within a Month after, to let him bleed a Pottle at least, give him a Purging Drink, and with your best convenience put him to *Gras*.

¶ The Gentleman's Complete Jockey.

Of the running of the Jockey.

The Cure is, pare away the corrupt places, until you see it raw, and where the Iffle is, then take a handfull of *Sass*, and as much *Salt*, and the White of three *Eggs*, and beat them together, and having made the *Sose* hollow, and tacked on, stop the Foot therewith very hard, and renew it every day for Seven days, and let not the Horse touch any wet, and when he is whole, be sure after Travel, to keep that Foot clean from the Gravel.

To make a Horse that he shall not neigh.

Tye a Woollen Lipp about the middle of his Tongue, and he shall not neigh so long as it remaineth.

To make a white mark on a Horse.

Take a *Tyre* and burn it to Powder, take *Daij-Rose*, and the Roots of *White-Bryer*, of each alike, dry them, and make Powder thereof, then flase the place you will have white, and rub it very much with the Powder, then wash the place with this Water: Take a quantity of *Honey-Suckle-Flowers*, and a quantity of *Honey*, and the water that *Milks* have been sod in, and wash the place, and rub it very sore therewith; do this five days, and it will be white.

To rids an Impillane.

Take *Mallow Roots*, and *Lilly Roots*, and bruise them, and put into them *Hug-graife*, and *Lynfet-Neat*, and *Flaxer-wiile* lay it too.

Of a Fartin, or sudden breaking out in any part of the Body.

Take this Oyntment, and have it ready in your Stable: Three ounces of *Quick-Silver*, put it into a Bladder; and two spoonfulls of the Juice of *Limons* and *Oranges*, shaking them together, then take a pound of *Hug-graife*, and of *Forjake*

The Gentleman's Complete Receipt. 83

Verjaine an Ounce, beat them all in a Dish, and work them thoroughly together; and take a pound of fresh Hagg-maize, and anoint the same therewith, and fit the same if need be, then wash it, and put into his Ears the juice of Rugg-must, and he shall recover.

Of soaking a Fifula or Wind-gall.

First scald the Fifula, and then take Raisins, Sheep-Tallow and Brimstone, boyl them together, lay it on hot with a Cloth, and it will sink down.

Of a Wrench in the Fetter-lock or any other Fyer that is suddenly done.

Take of Nervine, and Rancid-Say, and boyl them together a little on the Fire, and anoint it therewith.

Of a Blister.

Take the Juice of Gravel-Fyer, so much Brimstone, a quantity of Tar, and some Alum, and lay it to the Blister.

Of a Wind-Gall, that is ffull and grow again.

When you have cut the Skin, take a Spoonful of Oyl-de-Roy, a Spoonful of Turpentine, One pennyworth of Hagg-maize, the white of an Egg, and a quarter of an Ounce of Red-Lead, boyl them together to a-Salve, and lay the same to the place.

Of curing a sudden Hart.

Take Wax, Turpentine, Raisins, and Hagg-maize of the like quantity, and half so much Fyer as any of the other Simples, melt and boyl them together, and keep it ready for any accident. Lay it Platther-wise.

Of the dangerous Galling of a Horse.

Take a Pottle of Verjaine, Two Penny-worth of green Copperas, boyl it into a Pint and half, wash and search the Holes

3. The Gentleman's Complete Jockey.

Take therewith, and fill it with Red Leaf, to let it remain three days untouched, then wash it with the same, and fill it with Red Leaf, this will heal it, though it be galled to the Body.

To make a broken Hough, to make it grow again.

Take of *Garlick-leafe* seven Ounces, of *Horser-gras* three handfuls, of *Atches beaten* and sifted, of *Bitter-gras* that is old Two pound, mingle all their with a handful of *Ajor-Drag*, and boyl them together, and anoint the Hough therewith.

Of fretting of the Gutz.

Take in the Morning a quart of good *Air*, Four Quarters of *Pewter*, Seven Ounces of *Bay-berries*, as much *Lung-pepper*, and an Ounce of *Ginstre*, Two handfuls of *Water-cresses*, a handful of *Sage*, another of *Mint*, beat them altogether in the *Air*, then strain it, and give it him blood warm; rope all his Legs, and tye him that he lie not down, put him into a sweat, keep him warm, give him no cold water for Three days after, and feed him with dry Beans and Oats for his Provender.

To make a Horse follow his Master.

Take One pound of *Ointment*, a quarter of a pound of *Bromy*, half a pound of *Lumay*, and make a Bag thereto, and bear it about you next your Skin, and labour therewith till you sweat, and wipe the sweat with the Bag, and keep the Horse a day and a night fiddling, and give it him to eat, and also use to give him *Meat* and *Bread*, and he will follow you.

Of Bones out of joint.

The Cure is, bind all the Four Legs together, and to cast him on his back, and then to hoyft him from the ground with his heels upwards, so shall the weight of his body cause the Joynct to shoot in again, in its right place.

The Great and Common Complaint of the Head.

Of putting out of Shirts or Shaks, and of fowling.

The Cure is, to pull it out if it may be seen ; but if it be well and cannot, then take *Wine-wood*, *Poppy*, *Beeswax*, *Hogs-graue*, and *Hony*, boyl them together, and being hot, make a Plaster ; it is excellent for any fowling. So also is *Wine-Less*, *Wheat-Flower*, and *Cayenne* boylid together ; and when it is in a head Launce it.

Of a Strangie Wart.

The Cure is, if it be long enough, to tye a Thread about it very hard, and it will eat it off, or else take it off with a hot iron.

Of the Sinner cut and bruisid.

Take of *Tar*, *Bass-flower*, and *Oyl of Rose*, and lay it hot to the place : Of the thise effect are *Wines* and *Salves* *Oyl* fryed together : So is the Oyment of *Wines*, which you may have at the Apothecaries.

Of the Carb.

This is curiously known ; the Cure is, take a pialt of *Wine-dries*, a Porringer full of *Wheat-Flower*, of *Cayenne* half an Ounce, and stir them well together, and being made warme, charge the fore place therewith, running it every day downe, for the space of Three or Four Days, and when the ulcering is almost gone, then draw it with a hot Iron, and cover the burning with *Wine* and *Rose* molten together, and laid as warme, and clap on *Hocke* of his own colour, and let him rest, and come in no Water for the space of Twentiedays.

Auster for the Sore.

Take an Iron, and make it hot, and hold it against the Sore as nigh as you may, but touch not the Sore, and when

Mr. Gentleman's Compleat Doctor.

when it is warm, then take a Fleaun and wet it in Six or Seven places full of *Neruit*, then take a Spoonful of *Sab*, and a penny-weight of *Ferligrafe*, and the White of an *Egg*, and put all these together, and take a little *Fleau* and wet it therein and lay it to the Sore.

Of Wind-galls in Horses.

This Grief most men know. The Cure is, wash the places with warm water, and shave off the Hair, then draw it with a hot Iron, in this manner Ξ ; that done, slit the middle Line which passeth right down through the Wind-gall with a sharp Knife, beginning beneath and so upwards, half an Inch, and thrust the Jelly out, then take also *Pisch* and *Reyes* molten together, lay them on hot, and Blocks upon them.

Of the Pipes or Cratches in Horses.

This is a frettish, waterish Matter, breed in the Patters of the hinder Legs, sometimes by foul keeping, but principally of liquid and thin humours resorting to the Joyst, whereby the Legs will be Swoln, Hot, and Scabby: The Cure is, to wash the Patters with *Bew* and *Butter*, which being dry, clip away all the Hair, saving the Fettermock, then take of *Turpentine*, *Hogs-graſſe* and *Honey*, of all a like quantity, mingle them in a Pot, and put unto them a little *Bale-Armoy*, the yolks of two *Eggs*, and as much *Wheat-Flour* as will thicken them, then with a Slick lay it on a Cleath, make it fast to go round about the Patter, and bind it fast, renewing it every day, let him not come into any wet, but stand still, some will wash it only in *Gas-powder* and *Vinegar*.

Of the Graveling of Horses.

The Cure is, to pair his Hoof, and get out the Gravel, then stop it with *Turpentine* and *Hogs-graſſe*, molten hot, and then with *Tow*, and letware him come out of the Stable till he be well.

The Ring-bone in Horses.

This is a Griffe growing about the Crosets of the Feet. The Cure is, to fire the Sore with the right Loynes from the Palforn to the Coffin of the Hoof, in this manner, I.I.I. and let the edge of the Drawing Iron be as thick as the back of a good thick Knife, burn it so deep that the Skin may look yellow, then cover it with *Piss* and *Roses* molten together, and lay thereon Flocks of the Horses colour: Some will eat it away with Corrodives, as the Splint.

Of the Cross Scab.

This is a filthy stinking Scab, growing about the Crosets of the Hoofs: The Hair will Stair like Hogs bristles, and be always muttering, anoint when the Hair is shaven away, with the Ointment for the paws, Pag. 76. and keep it from wet.

These Infirmities are cured by the following Medicines, viz.
Splints, Spavin, Carb, Ringbone, Quintatum and
all other Bony Excrements.

Take *White-Wine*, *Arfwick*, or *Mercury*, ground to Powder, and make a little slit upon the head of the Excretion, the length of a Barley-corn, and down to the Roots; then raise up the Skin with a fine Corner, and put in as much of the *Arfwick* or *Mercury* as will lye upon Three half pence, then bind upon the Sore, a little hard *Flax-hands*; which done, tie up the Horses head to the rack so as he may not bite the sore place, and let him stand the space of Two or Three Hours, for in that time the anguish will be gone, and the Medicine shall have done working; then put the Horse to his Meat, either in the House or Abroad. And the Concretion will fall away of it self; which done, you may heal up the Sore.

¶ *of Wmlichah's Templeat Jockey.*

Of the Rerent or singling the Foot with the pick of a Nail.

The Cure is *Turpentine, Wine, and Sheep-Suet*, moulded together, and pour into it melted and hot.

Of Sustaining.

The Cure is, take off his Shoes, and make his Feet ver-
ty clean, but putt no heat away, then tack a hollow Shoe
on, and take half a pound of the *Sword of Bacon*, a quart
of a pound of *White-Sau*, a handful of *Bacon*, a handful of
Bay-leaves, and Four or Five Branches of the Herb *Grace*,
stamp them well and fry them, and lay them to his Foot as
hot as you can, both under and over the Foot, and keep
him dry, renewing the Cure as you find occasion, Four
or Five times till it be perfected.

Another.

When you find your Horse to be Sustained, prefently
clap to each of his Fore Feet two new laid Eggs, and crush
them therein, and then upon the top of them lay good store
of *Cow-Lung*, thus stop him four hours, and he will recover.

*Distrallior in giving of Fire, or singeing of Corr-fires, which he
all fers of Farcies, Cauders, Fistulas, Leprosies, Mag-
gies, Scabs, &c.*

There are two ways to give Fire, the One actual, and
the other potential; the First is done by Medicine, either
Corrosive, **Putrefactive** or **Cauftick**. The actual Fire
stoppeth the Corruption of Members, and stancheth blood,
provided the Sinews, Cords, and Ligaments, be not touch-
ed; the best instruments to Caustrize, or Seal with, are
of Gold or Silver; the second best are of Copper, the
worst of Iron. The Potential-Fires, are **Medecines**, **Cor-
rosive**, **Putrefactive** or **Cauftick** (as we laid before) Cor-
rosives are simple or compound, the simple Corrosives are
Zack-Allas, burnt and unburnt, **Red Coral**, **Mercurius**,

sublimed, &c. The Compound *Regantum Apothecarium*, *Retinatum et gipsatum*, and *Regantum Corosum*, with others. Medicines Putrefactive, are your *Arficks*, *Refluxar*, *Chlorals*, and *Ammonium*. Medicines which are Caustick, are strong *Lye*, *Lime*, *Vitriol*, *Aqua fortis*, and the like. Corrofives are weaker than Putrefactive, and Putrefactive are weaker than Causticks. Corrofives work in the soft Flesh, Putrefactive in the hard, and Causticks break the sound Skin. Thus you see the Use of these things, you may apply them at your Pleasure; for these cure all sorts of Farcies, Cancers, Fistula's, Leprosies, Malignies, Scabs, and such like poisonous Infections.

Of a Hawk alse as prick'd in the Foot with a Nail, or otherwise.

The Cure is, Cut the mouth of the Hole where the Prick is, as broad as a Two-penny piece, and搜 it down, for else it may prove very dangerous; for Readily take a handful of red Nettles, and beat them in a Mortar, put thereto a spoonful of red Vinegar, and a spoonful of black Soap, and three spoonfuls of Beers-Grease or fat Bacon, beat them altogether, and make a Salve thereof, and thrust as much into the Soe as you can, and stop it from flowing out; let it take no Wet, and it shall never rot away.

Of the Quinsy.

This is a breaking out of the top of the Croset of the Hoof, commonly on the inside, and it cometh by prickling or gravelling; it will break forth with Matter, or a little deep Hole like a Thistle. The Cure is, To burn it about with a hot Iron, then take of *Arfick* the quantity of a Bean, beaten into fine Powder, and put into the bottom of the Hole with a Quill; stop the mouth of the Hole close with Tow, and bind it so that the Horse may not come at it with his Mouth, and so let him get that day; the next if the Hole look black it is a good sign, then trust it with *Hay-graft* and *Terpentine* moisten together with a Teat of *Tow*, and cover it with a Ball of *Tow* dry'd in

that Ointment ; continue so to do till you have got out that Core, and then see whether the loose Gritle in the bottom be uncovered, and feel with your Finger or a Quill if you be nigh it, and if you be, raise it with a crooked Instrument, and pull it out with a pair of Nippers, and then tint it with the said Ointment, and after take *Horn* and *Verdegreen* boiled together till it look red, and heal therewith, laid upon Tow. Take heed that it heal not too soon, or close up too suddenly.

Of the Hoof-bane.

This is a shrinking together of the whole Coffin of the Hoof, whereby the Tuel of the Foot, which is inclosed in the same, is so pinched, that the Horse is very lame therewith, and especially after Travel ; and if you knock them they will sound a little like to an empty Bottle ; and if both Feet be not bound, you shall apparently see the Hoof that is bound to be less than the other. This proceedeth from suffering the Feet to remain dry after great Travel. This Distemper is also common with a Fennet or All Hoofs, for that only wrinkleth and woxeth brittle, and by reason of the breadth and shallowness of the Hoof it cannot inclose the Tuel of the Foot, to strengthen it ; and yet it is the worst Hoof. The Cure is, to open the Feet in the Quarters very much, so that you may well lay your Thumb betwixt the Frush of the Foot and the end of the Coffin where it principally bindeth ; then raise both the Quarters of the Hoof with a Drawer from the Crochet up to the Sole of the Foot, so deep as you see the Dew com out, and also two rases of such fide ; then open the Foot within, and let him bleed in the Toes ; if it be old, the Blood will be as cold almost as Water, for that it hath not been fed with Blood, wherein the vital Spirit is ; and this is the cause of the Coldness, whereby it is apparent that the Hoof hath not prospered but starved, for you shall see the Frush and all the sole of the Foot shrunk up and frowed ; then take away the sole of the Foot, and stop it with Nettles and Salt bruised gently together, not over hard renewing it once a day for nine days, and be sure every day

twice to anoint the Croset of the Hoof; and at the end of the nine days, be sure every day twice thoroughly to anoint the Croset of the Hoof; and after the nine days end, let his Feet be stopped with *Brass* and *Hogs-grease* boiled together, bound too as hot as may be, but still anoint the Hoof; and when you put him to *Gras*, let him not wear any Shoes, but put him into a Marsh or Meadow, deep of *Gras*, whereby his Feet will be always wet, and so enlarged again. Some ignorantly call this *Dry-Foundering*, when as all Foundering in that Foot proceeds from the descending of the Humours to the Foot, and this is clean contrary; and my Experience hath cured Horses that have been Hoof-bound four or five Years.

Of the Loosing of the Hoof.

This Grief, if it be loose round about the Hoof, then it cometh by Foundring; if it be in part, then by some other Anguish: if it come by Foundring, then it will first break into the fore part of the Croset, against the Toe; but if a chisel Nail or Prick, then the Hoof will loosen equally round; but if other Hurts, then right about the place that is offended, which should be well observed of the Farrier; yet what Cause soever it is, be you careful for to keep in the open the hole in the bottom of the Foot, and restrain it yet above with the restrictive Plaister of *Bale-Armour*, *Bear-skin*, *Flower* and *Eggs*, mentioned in the Cure of the Prick of the Foot. You may take three spoonfulls of *Tar*, a quarter of a pound of *Koife*, a handful of *Taffy*, a handful of *Ran*, a handful of *Mist*, and as much of *Southernwood*, beat them together with a pound of *Butter*, and one penny-worth of *Virgin-wax*, and so make a Plaister, and bind it too for three days, and it will be whole.

Of the casting the Hoof.

The cure is, Take of *Tyger-skin* one pound, of *Tar* half a pint, of *new-rough* *Wax* half a pound, of *Sallies-Oyl* half a pint; boil all these together, until they be thoroughly incorporated, then make a Boot of Leather with a strong Sole,

92. The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Sole, fit for the Horse's Foot, to be buckled about the Pastern, then take a good quantity of *Flex* or *Tar*, and lay this Salve upon it to cover the Foot, so as that the Boot may not any way grieve the Horse, renewing it every day until it be whole; then let him stand in the Stable upon a Bed of Cow-dung and Snails beaten together, which will increase the same, for fifteen days, and then put him to *Grafs*. This Ointment should be in a readiness to anoint the Horse.

For Rending, Fraying, or any other Injunction of the Tendons, or Hoofs of a Horse.

First pare this, open the Heel's wide, and shoe large, strong and hollow; then take a good quantity of Cow-dung, half so much *Grease* or *Kuchisar*, a like quantity of *Tar*, and a like quantity of *Soot*; boyl all these very well together, and then boyl hot as may be, see you stop your Horse's Feet therewith dryly; and it will not only take away all *Anguish*, but also strengthen the Hoofs, and make them to endure any Labour. But when you journey or travel the Horse, (as Exercise availeth much for this Cure) then put in the aforesaid Stepping cold, the first night after his Labour, and add unto it the White of an Egg or two, for that will take away from the Heat and Bearing of the former days Labour, and will keep the Fruish strong and dry. But in time of Rest, let it be boyl hot as aforesaid. Now if the Heat be naturally brittle, or by Accident broken, or by the former Infirmity dried up and strained, then to enlarge it, to make it tough, and to make it to grow swiftly, take of *Pigs-Grease*, or of *Hogs-Grease*, or *Turpentine*, and of *Mastick*, of each a like quantity, and half so much *Lard* as of all the rest, except all but the *Turpentine*, and being melted, take it from the Fire, and put in the *Turpentine*, stirring it about till it be well incorporated together; then put it into a Pot; and when it is cold, be sure you cover it close. With this Salve twice or thrice a day anoint the Cronets of the Horse's Hoofs, close by the Hair, at the setting on of the Hoof it will make it shoot fast, and grow rough and large.

For Harts upon the Crests of the Heels; as, an Over-reach, Stub, or Trick, &c.

First take of *Sap*, and of *Salt*, of each a like quantity, and mix them together like a Paste; then having cut out the Over-reach, or Hart, and laid it plain, first wash it with *Wine* and *Salt*, or *Berr* and *Salt*, and with a Cloth dry it, then bind on the mixed *Sap* and *Salt*, not renewing it twenty-four hours; and thus do (if the Wound be great) for three or four days: then having drawn out all the *Venom* (as this *Salt* will quickly do) take a Spoonful or two of *Tyrin-Oyl*, and as much *Ceruse* (which we call *White Lead*) and mix it together to a white Salve, then spread that upon the Sore Morning and Evening until it be whole, which will be effected suddenly: for nothing doth dry up sooner, nor is more kindly and natural for the breeding of a new Hoof than this, as you shall find by Experience.

To help the Swelling or Soreness of the Feet.

When you find your Horse to be furbated, presently clap on each of his Fore-feet two new-laid Eggs, and crush them therein; then upon the top of them lay good Cow-dung: thus stop them for four hours, and he will recover.

Of the Dry Spavin.

The Cure is, to wash it with warm Water, and shave off the Hair so far as the Swelling is, then scarifie the place, that it bleed, and take of *Castoriles* a dozen, and of *Lufurkium* half a spoonful, break them into a Powder, and boyl them together, with a little *Oyl de Bag*; and being boyling hot, with Feathers anoint the Sore and tye his Tail for wiping it, and within an hour after let him in the Stable, and tye him so that he lye not down that Night (for rubbing of the Medicine) and within a day after, anoint it with Butter, for six days, then draw the sore place with an hot Iron; take a sharp one like a Bodkin,

kin, somewhat bowing at the Point, and so upward & twixt the Skin and the Flesh, and thrust it in at the nether end of the middle Line an inch and a half, then anoint it with *Turpentine* and *Hogs-Grease* molten together, and made warm, renewing it every day once, for the space of nine days: but remember, that after this burning, you take up the Master Vein, which must be done in this manner: Call the Horse upon some Straw, then having found the Vein, mark well that part of the Skin which covereth it, and pull that aside from the Vein with your left Thumb, to the intent that you may slit it with a Razor, without touching the Vein, and cut no deeper then through the Skin, and that longest wise that the Vein goeth, and not above an inch, then will the Skin return again to the place over the Vein, with a Crochet uncover the Vein, and make it bare, thrust the Crochet underneath it, and raise it up, and put a Shoe-makers Thread underneath, somewhat higher then the Crochet standing, slit the Vein long-ways, that it may bleed; and having bled somewhat from above, then knit it with a sure knot somewhat above the Slit, suffering it to bleed only from beneath, a great quantity, then knit up the Vein also beneath the Slit, with a sure Knot, then betwixt these two Knots cut the Vein asunder where it was Slit, and fill the Hole with Salt, then lay on this Charge. Take half a pound of *Pitch*, a quarter of a pound of *Rosin*, a quarter of a pint of *Turpentine*, boil them together, and being warm, anoint all the inside of the Joint, and clap on Flocks of the Horses Colour, and turn him to Grafts, if it may be, till he be perfectly whole, and the Hair grown again.

Another for the same.

Cut the Skin over the Veins, as aforesaid and slit the Vein and cut it as aforesaid, then were the *Spavin* is highest, with a small Chissel of the breadth of a penny, strike off the quantity of an Almond, and no more; then take two penny weight of *Verdegrease*, another of *Neroli*, beat them small, and put it into the *Spavin*, and three days after wash the *Cofly*, with Bark-water or Vinegar: then take *Cloves* and *Violaceous* upon a Linnen Cloth, and lay it to the *Spavin*

Spavin every day, and for seven days alter, a new Plaster ; then draw it with a hot Iron, as aforesaid, and also a Change, and Flocks, as is before recited.

Of the wet or blood Spavin.

This Disease also is commonly known, and some call it the thorough Spavin. It is fed by a thin flexible Humour, by the Master Vein. The cure is, to shave off the Hair, and to take up the Vein in every part, as I shall describe in the Cure of the *Bone Spavin*, and then cut the Vein asunder, and draw it with a hot Iron, charge it and put on the Flocks, and it will perfectly heal and cure it, for I have proved it certain.

All these Distempers are cured by the Medicine following. All Warty Eyes. All Blood-stitten Eyes. All Dimness of Sight. All Lunatick Eyes. All Cankers in the Eyes. The Pin and the Web in the Eye. All pusses or Syars. All Fiftail's is the Eye. The Haw is the Eye.

Take true *Ground-ivy*, which some call *Alehoof*, or the ordinary *Ground-ivy*, and beat it well in a Morter, and if it be very dry, drop a little *White Rose-water* into it, or a little of the Water of the Herb *Eyebright*, then drain it well into a clean Glas, and with that Juice wash, anoint, or cure the Sores in the Eyes at least three or four times in a Day : As for the *Haws* or *Hags* in a Horse's Eye, every common Smith knows how to cut them away, and that easily.

For a Wrench or Sprain in the Fattern.

Take a Quart of *Brine*, sethe it till the scum arise, and then strain it, and put into it a handful of *Turf*, a handful of *Mallows*, a Sawcer full of *Honey*, a quarter of a pound of *Sheep-Tallow*, beat them together, and set them on the Fire, till they be well sodden, and then lay it hot to the Smart, and sew a Cloth fast about it, and so let it rest five Days : and if this prevail not, wash the place, and shave away the Hair, saving the fetterlock ; scarrifie it, and lay *Lawhgrides* to it, and heal it as the *Spavin*.

Of a Horse that is Hipped.

The Horse that is hipped, is when his Hip-Bone is out of the right place ; it may come by Stripe, Stretch, Slipping, Shding or Falling ; he will go fideling, and the lower Hip will fall lower than the other. The Cure is speedily to take of *Oyl de Bay*, of *Dialthes*, of *Neval*, of *Swines-grease*, of each half a pound, melt them altogether, stirring them continually until they be thoroughly mingled together, and anoint the sore place against the Hair with this Ointment every day once a day for fifteen days together, and make the Ointment to Sink well into the Flesh, by holding a broad Bar of Iron over the place anointed, to make it enter into the Skin ; and if at the end of those days it doth not mend, then slit a Hole downward into the Skin, an inch beneath the Hip-bone, make the hole so wide that you may easily thrust in a Rowel with your Finger, and then with a little broad slice of Iron, loosen the Skin from the Flesh above the Bone, and round about the same, so broad as the Rowel may lye flat, and plain betwixt the Skin and the Flesh ; which Rowel should be of soft Calves Leather, with a Hole in the midst, like a Ring, having a Thread ty'd to it, to pull out when you would cleanse the Hole : and if the Rowel be rowelled about with Flocks fast ty'd on, and anointed with the Ointment of *Hogs-grease* and *Turpentine* boiled together, it will draw so much the more. That done, tent it with a long Tent of *Flax*, dipt in *Turpentine* and *Hogs-grease* made warm, and so renew it every day for fifteen days ; and before that you dress him, let him be walk'd every day a quarter of an hour, and as it healeth, make the Tent every day less than the other ; and as soon as he is whole, draw a hot Iron crois his Loin of eight or nine inches long, right over against the Hip-bone, so as the rowelled place may be in the midst thereto, and burn him no deeper, but so as the Skin may look yellow ; then charge all the Skin over all the Buttocks with this Charge : Take of *Parch* one pound, of *Kefin* one pound, of *Tar* half a pint, boil them together, and being well warmed, spread it with a Clout ty'd to a Stick, clap as many Flocks on the

Hip.

No: sc as will stick, that he may travel the more at his own Will.

Of Stiffing, and Hurts in the Stiffer.

This is when the Stiffing-bone is removed from its right place; but if it be not removed, then the Horse is hurt, and not stiffed. The Cure is in all Points like to the *Shoulder-Pigie*, saving that the Pins need not to be so long because the Stiffing-place is not so broad; and standing in the Stable, let him have a Paſtern with a Ring upon his Fore-leg, and thereunto faffen a Cord, which Cord must go about his Neck, and let it be so much strained as may bring his Fore-leg forward; then the other to keep the Bone from starting out: but if it be but a Hurt with ſome Stripe or Strain, then the Bone will not stand out, but perhaps the place may be ſwoln, then anoint it with the Ointment laſt mentioned in the Receipt going before, every day for fifteen days; then rowel him with a hempe Rowel, and cleanse the Hole every day, by turning the Rowel anointed with the ſaid Ointment.

Of Wounds.

The Cure is, Take of *Turpentine*, of *Mel Rosmarini*, of Oil of *Rofet*, of each a Quarter, and a little *Hemorrhage Wine*, and melt them together, stirring them together continually; and ſo ſe the Tent or Roll, as occaſion ſhall ſerve.

A Receipt for any extraordinary Cold or Cough, or Purſiness in a Horse, which the weak Farrier calls Broken-Winded.

I will here ſet you down the Secrets of my Knowledge, in ſome ready, eaſy, approved Receipts, which I never found to fail. When you find your Horse taken with any extreme Cold, or dry Cough or Purſiness (which ignorant Farriers call *Brake-winded*) you ſhall take three quarters of an ounce of the Conſerv'e of *Elephant*, and diſſolve it in a pint and a half of the half Sack, and ſo give it to the Horse with a Horſe, in the Morning taſting, and ſide-lin.

a little after it ; and this you may do divers Mornings together until you perceive the Infirmity decrease and waste away. The Simple Conserve of *Elecampane* is of excellent use ; it taketh away any ordinary Cold, or Stopping, it comforteth the Lungs, enlargeth the Wind, purgeth the Head of all filthy Matter, and dissolveth many other Obstructions, yet is not the best Conserve, nor worketh the best Effect, if the Infirmity be old and dangerous, or if there be any Attainture in the Lungs or Liver, therefore in that Case you shall fly to the compound Conserve, which is made in this manner : Take the best candy Roots of *Elecampane* that can be procured, and heat them in a Mortar with the Syrop of *Celisfer* till it be brought to a very thin Substance, then with the finest refined *Sugar* thicken it, till it be reduced to the true Body of a Conserve ; then keep it close in a Galley-pot, and use it with *Sack*. I have known by the daily Use of this Conserve, divers dry (and supposed incurable) Coughs that have been taken away, together with the Heaving of the Body, and the Wind so enlarged, that albeit the Motion was before swift, like the broken-winded, yet it hath come to a moderate and slow Temper, and the dry Cough which did accompany it hath been quite gone. Now if you find any Difficulty in making or proving of these Medicines before siewed, or that the Infirmity not being great or dangerous, you may possibly think a Medicine of less force, and easier to compasse would accomplish it ; then you shall take of the Syrop of *Celisfer* an ounce, of the fine Powder of *Elecampane*, of *Artisfer*, and of *Liquarice*, of each half an ounce, of brown *Sugarcandy* an ounce, divided into two parts, then with a much *Sweet-Batter* as will suffice, work all the former Powders, and one part or a half of the *Sugarcandy*, and all the Syrop into a stiff Paste, then divide into two or three Balls, and roll them into a round form, or of the Fashion of an Egg, and after roll them all over in the other half or part of the *Sugarcandy*, and then give the whole quantity at one time to the Horse in the manner of a Hill, and give them in the Morning fasting ; then ride the Horse half an hour after the giving, and let him fast two hours at the least after he cometh in, and let him be warm cloathed,

and stopped, and his Limbs well rubbed, especially his Head; let him by no means drink any cold Water, but so as that he may have Exercise after, and let his Exercise be moderate, and not violent; let his Hay be a little sprinkled with Water, and his Oats with Beer and Ale; as for the Bread, 'tis of it self moist enough; and let all his Meat be generally well drest, fisted, or chipped, for nothing is more offensive to a Horse than Foulness and Driness, nor more comfortable than Cleanness, provided that your Corn be not green and unsweet in the Mow or Reek, nor your Hay rank or rotten. Thus you shall do several mornings till you find Amendment, neither shall you spare any Travel or Occasion, but, having Medicine about you, use it in your Journeying, for this doth not take away any thing to weaken Nature, but adds to the Force thereof.

For any dangerous Bots or Maw-worms.

Take as much *Precipitate* (which is *Mercury calcined*) as will gently lye upon a Silver Two-pence, and lay it on a piece of *Sweet-Butter* almost as big as a Hens Egg, in the manner of a Pill; and then in the Morning falling, the Horse having flood on the Muffl or empty Rack, if it be possible, or otherwise (if the Extremity of the Disease compel you) at any other time, draw forth the Horse's Tongue, and make him to swallow the Pill, then chuse him a little up and down, and after set him up warm, making him fast till two hours after, and it will kill all manner of *Worms* whatsoever; yet in the Administration hereof, you must be wondrous circumspect and careful, for in the *Precipitate* there is a strong poisonous Quality, so that by no means there must be taken more than is prescribed, except with good Caution. Again, If you mix the *Precipitate* with a little *Sweet-Butter*, as much as a Hafel-Nut, close you lip it up in the great Lump of *Butter*, it will be the better, and allay much of the evil quality. But this leave to your own Discretion, assuring you, that there is not any thing comparable to this for this Infirmitie.

To beat or dry up any old Ulcer or Cancerous Sore.

Take *Mastick*, *Frankincense*, *Cloves*, *Green Cifers*, and *Brimstone*, of each a little quantity, of *Myrrhe* double as much as of any one of the other; beat all to a fine Powder, then burn it on a *Clafingdith* of Coals, but let it not flame; then as the Smoke ariseth, take a handfull of fine Lint, or Tow, and hold it over the Smoke, so that it may receive all the Perfume thereto into it; then when it is well perfumed, put the Lint into a close Box, and so keep it: When you have occasion to use it, first wash the Sore with Urine, then dry it, and lastly, lay on some of this Lint or Tow; and thus do twice a day, and it is a speedy Cure. And as this is sovereign for any Horse, so it is a sovereign for any Man also.

For any Sore Eyes in Horses.

Take the *Shells* of seven or eight *Eggs*, and cleane away from them the *Slime*, then put those Shells between two clean *Tiles*, and so lay them in hot glowing *Embers*, and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lie a good space, till that the Shells be all dried, then take them up, and beat the Shells to a very fine *scarf* Powder, then with a *Goose's Quill* blow this Powder into the Horse's Eye that is offendid with *Fis* and *Web*, *Film*, or any other of these Distempers, and it is a certain Cure, and thus do Morning, Evening, and at Night. But if it be a watery or inflamed Eye, for any *Bruise*, *Stripe*, or descending *Humour*, then take a spoonful and a halfe of fine *scarf* Powder of *White Sugarcandy*, and being mixt together with as much *May-Powder* (if you can get it, or for want thereof, the best *Sweet-Baster*) work both their Powders into a gentle *Salve*, and therewith anoint the Horse's Eye Morning, Noon, and Night, for it cleanlieth purgeth, comforteth, and coolleth.

For an all Strain or Lameness in the Joints generally.

Take *Bears-Grease*, *Balsamianick*, *Black-Sap*, and *Nervous*, of each a like quantity, boil them altogether, and then apply it hot to the Grief, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and also heating it very well, either with a hot Brickhat or hot Fire-shovel: thus do once a day until the Pain be gone.

Of a Back-Sinew Strain, or any other Strain.

Take an ounce of *Turpentine*, and two or three spoonfuls of *Aqua vita*, and beat them together in a Bladder, or other vessel, until they come to a perfect Salve; then anoint the Strain very well therewith, and heat it in, either with a hot Brick, or else a Bar of Iron; and thus doing three or four times, it will take away the Strain.

For any desperate Strain in the Shoulder, or other hidden Parts, or any Fistula, Pole-Evil, or other Inflammation and Swelling.

Take a large earthen Vessel of a Gallon, and almost fill it with the Herb *Armaria* and *Broomlime* equal in quantity, and equally mixt; then put to them as much of the old-est and strongest Urine that can be got, as will cover the Herbs all over, and fill the Vessel full; then cover the pot close with a Stone, Board, or such like thing, and so let it stand, for this can never be too old. Now when you have occasion to use it for any Grief aforesaid, you shall take an earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto both of the Urines and of the Herbs, so much as shall be convenient for the Grief, and you shall boil it well upon the Fire: Then if it be for a Shoulder-Strain, you shall take an old Boot, and cut off the Foot, so that you may draw it over the Horfe's Foot, and about his Knee, almost to the Elbow of his Shoulder, keeping the nether part of the Boot as close and as strait about his Leg as may be, but the upper part (which covereth all the Shoulders) must be wide

and spacious; into this Boot thrust all your Mixture as hot as the Horse can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about the Shoulders, especially before and behind; then driving up the upper part of the Boot, so fasten it to the Main of the Horse, that it may by no means slip down, but keep constant and firm: and thus you must do once or twice a day, till the Grief be gone. As for the Effect thereof you shall find it, for this is the most violent of all Medicines; so that if there be any foul Matter that must come forth, this will in an instant bring it to a Head, ripen, break it, and heal it; if there be no such things, then in as short a time it will drive away the offending Humours, take away the Swelling, and give present Ease. Yet would I have you to use this but in Extremity, because for the time the Torture is almost insufferable, and indeed not to be endured but only by Horses. Now if it be a *Fistula*, or any such like Impostumation or Swelling, then you may spare the Boot, and only lay on the Medicine in the manner of a Poultis, and it will be as sufficient.

Of a False Quarter.

This is a Rift most commonly on the inside of the Hoof; it cometh by the evil paring of the Hoof; the Horse will halt and the Rift will bleed. The Cure is, Cut so much away on the side of the Shoe where the Grief is, so as that the Rift may be uncovered, then open the Rift with a Drawer, and fill it with a Roll of Toe, dipt in *Taypaine, Wax, and Sheeps-Sau* molten together, renewing it every day till it be whole. When the Rift is closed, draw him betwixt the Hair and the Hoof with a hot Iron overthwart the Place, whereby the Hoof will shoot all downward, and ride him with another Shoe till he be thoroughly whole.

For an Over-reach on the Heel.

Take the *White of an Egg*, and *Bale-Armour*, mingled together with a little *Flix*, and renew it for four or five days.

For an upper Taint or an Over-reach upon the Bask, Sinews of the Shank, somewhat above the Joint.

This is a swelling of the Master-Sinew, which proceeds from this, that the Horse doth over-reach, and strike that Sinew with the Toe of his Hinder-Foot, which causes the place to fwell, and the Horse to holt. The Cure is, To wash the place with warm Water, and to shave off the Hair as far as the Swelling goes, and to scarifie every place of the Sore lightly with a Razor, that the Blood may issue forth; then take of *Castoriles* and *Escharium* half an ounce, mingle them together with half a quartern of *Sap*, and with a Slice spread some of the Ointment over all the Sore, and let him reit for an hour after; let him stand without Litter, and the next day dres him so again; the third day anoint the Sore with *Baster*, and continue so to do for nine days after; then take three handfuls of *Mallows*, a handful of *Sage*, and a *Rosie-cake*, and boil them in Water, and when they are soft, put a pound of *Baster*, and half a pint of *Sallet-Oil*, to the Water; and being warm, wash the place four or five times together therewith.

Of the Nether-Joint.

This is a Bladder full of *Jelly*, like to a *Wind-gall*, not apparent but by feeling, growing in the midst of the Pavement, above the Frush. It proceeds from some Strain, Wrench, or Over-reach; the Nether-Joint towards the Fetterlock will be hot, and somewhat iwoin. The Cure is, Tye him about the Joint with a Lift somewhat hard, and it will cause the Bladder to appear to the Eye, then lance it, and thrust out the *Jelly*; then take the *White of an Egg* and *Salt* beaten together with a little Tow, and bind it unto it, renewing it once a day for five or six days.

Of the Screw, or Scrotum.

This is like a *Splint* in manner of a Grifflie, as great as an *Almond*; it groweth on the Foreleg. The Cure is, Take

an *Oniss* and pick out the Core, and put therein a spoonful of *Honey*, a quarter of a pound of unblack'd *Lime*, three penny worth of *Fordegasse*, and rost the *Oniss*, and bruise it, and lay it to hot, having first cut the Skin.

All these Infirmities are cured by this Medicine following:
Fever in general, the Pestilence, the Falling-Evil, the Fal-
fe or Shaking-Evil, the Night-Mare, the Hile-leas, all
Consumptions, the Draughts, all Typhus, the Leaching of
Meat, cutting out of drink, all Sorenes, the Hungry-Evil,
the Sick Liver, Sick Gall, Sick Spleen, Sick Kidneys, the
Tallow, the Drapie, Coffivensis in the Body, the Brest,
all Worms, Pijng Ethol, mawring of the Tad, Falling
of the fad, Falling of the Tad, Easing of Head-ach, the
Falling of the Crest.

If the Horse has been brought weak by Sicknes, and that you find it proceedeth from soure inward Infection, or Corruption of Blood, you shall give him in the Morning, fasting, two spoonfuls of the Powder of *Diapente* well brewed with four spoonfuls of *Honey*, tost to and fro in a pint of *White-wine*, or *Nuscaline*, and *Malmsey*, and ride him afterwards an hour in the Sun; then set him up warm in the Stable, and let him fast an hour; give him such Provender he will eat, and his Hay sprinkled with a little Water. But if his Sicknes proceed from any cold Cause, or from any riding and too sudden cooling, or from washing when he was hot, or such like; then you shall give the same quantity of *Diapente* and *Honey* in Sack, or other hot Wine in the manner aforesaid: But if his Sicknes be less contagious, or that Wine is not ready to be had, then you shall give the same quantity of the *Powder* and *Honey*, either in a quart of strong Ale, or a quart of strong Beer, observing all the Instructions formerly declared. Now for as much as this Powder of *Diapente* may be many times wanting, or at least hard to be got on the sudden, as we have formerly said, therefore in case of such Extremity you shall take a good handful of *Celandine Roots* Leaves and all, and having pick'd and cleansed them you shall take of *Wormwood* and *Rue*, of each half a handful, boil these in a Pot of strong Ale or Beer till the full half

half be consumed, then strain it, and dress the herbs, and dissolve into, to drink, half a pound of Sweet-Butter, and an ounce and a ha'f of the best Treacle; being no more but I dewarm, give it the Horse to drink in the Morning fasting, and walk him an hour after, then set him up warm, and let him fast another hour; then give him meats as aforesaid: And do this divers Mornings, according to the greatness of his Sickness. Now for this Cure you must by no means forget to let the Horse blood in the Neck-Vein, an hour or two before you give him the first drink, and let him bleed till you see the corrupt Blood change, and begin to look pure; to know which, you shall have the first Blood and the last Blood in two Saucers, and as they cool they will easily shew you the difference. Now if your Horse happen to fall suddenly Sick upon you as you travel, when there is no Town nor Help near you, then you shall presently alight from his Back, and with a sharp pointed Knife, or Bodice, or for want of both, with a sharp-pointed strong Tag, you shall let him Blood in the Roof of the Mouth, amongst the Bars, somewhat near to his uppermost Teeth, and make him bleed well, walking him forward, and suffering him to chomp and eat his own Blood, which is very wholesome for him at that time, and almost a present Cure. Now if the Blood stanch of it self, (as commonly it will) then you shall presently piss in his Mouth, and so ride him with all Gentleness and Ease homeward; and being set up warm, wash his Mouth and Nostrils with Vinegar, and the next Morning let him Blood in the Neck-Vein, and give him either of the Drenches before prescribed, and no doubt but you may hold on your Journey without danger. Now if in the pricking of the Mouth, you either stick your Knife too deep, or else cut the Vein asunder, whereby you cannot stanch the Blood (as many times it happeneth) in this case you shall put some big round piece of Wood into the Horse's Mouth (to keep him from biting,) and then take a little of the fine Down of a Hare's Skin or Cozy Skin, or (for want of them) the fine lint of any woollen or linen Cloth, and hold it hard to the Wound, and it will stanch it, such Care being taken, as that it be not to be lick'd away with the Horse's Tongue.

For the Malender.

This is a Scab growing in the form of Lines or Streaks over the Bend of the Knee, in the inside of the Leg. The Cure is, wash it with warm Water and shave the Scab clean away, then take a spoonful of Soap, as much Lime, and make it into a Paste, and spread as much on a Clout as will cover the Sore; bind it fast, renewing it every day for three days together, then anoint the same with *Oyl of Rose*, to cause the Crust to fall away, and then wash it with Urine, and strew on the Powder of *Oyster-shells*.

Another of the same.

Take a *barrel* of *Herring* with a soft Bone, and two spoonfuls of *Black-Sugar*, half an ounce of *Allum*, and bruise them together, and lay it to the Sore three days.

Of the Splint.

This soreness is known to most Men: The Cure is, Wash it with Warm water, and shave off the Hair, and lightly scarify all the sore place with a point of a Razor, so as that the Blood may issue forth; then take of *Cochlearides* half a spoonful, and of *Euforbium* as much, beaten into fine Powder, and mingle them together with a spoonful of *Oyl de Bay*, and then melt them in a little Pan, stirring them well together, so that they may not boil over; and being so boiling-hot, take two or three Feathers, and anoint all the sore places therewith, and let not the Horse remove from the place for two hours after. Afterwards carry him away, and tye him so that he cannot touch the Medicine with his Lips, and also let him stand without Litter that day and a night, and within two or three days after anoint the Sore with Butter for nine days.

Another for the same.

Take an Onion and pick out the Core, and put therein a spoonful of unslack'd Lime, and four penny weight of

Peridgras,

For leggash., and half a pound of *Lvseler-fel*, and rost the Onion until it be soft, and then cut the Skin a little, that the Medicine may enter to fret the Malady out, and let the Hair remain, and the Medicine lye to it three days.

For Faustring.

Before I enter to express the Cure, I would have you diligently to note the Cause of this Disease. The Causes of *Faustring* are either from superfluous and over-much Eating and Drinking, or from immoderate and extreme Labour, or abundance and fullness of Humours. The undoubted and infallible Cure is, Garter each Leg immediately one handful above the Knce, (and with a Lift good and hard) then walk him, chafe him into a Heat, and being somewhat warm, let him Blood in both the Breast-Veins, 2 or 3 Quarts, and reserve the same, continually stirring it with your hands together, to gather out the Clods thereof: then take thereof two quarts, of *Wheat-flower* half a peck, six *Eggs* Shells and all, and of *Bale Armony* half a pound, of *anguis Draconis* half a quart, and a quart of strong Vinegar, mingle them altogether, and charge all his Shoulders, Breast, Neck, Loynes, and Fore-legs, therewith, and walk him upon loose hard Ground, suffering him not to stand still: and when that the Charge is dry, refresh it again: and having walked him three or four hours together, lead him into the Stable, give him a little Mash of Malt, and some Hay and Provender, and then walk him again, for four or five days, renewing the Charge upon him as it dryeth, so long as it lasteth, and keep it warm, with a thin Dyet: but if you see the Horse to be afraid to set his Hinder-feet to the Ground, and to be so weak behind, as to stand quivering and shaking, and coveting to lie down, garter him also about the Hoofs, on the Hinder-legs, and let him Blood also in the High-Veins, to the quantity of a Pottle, and so double your Charge in quantity, and therewith charge both Hinder-legs, Reins and Flanks, and all against the Hair: and if you find him feeble, by drawing so g. extra quantity of Blood, give him a quart of *Malesfy* and a little *Cinnamon*, *Mace*, and *Pepper*, finely beaten into a Powder, made lukewarm, and let him be walk'd

walk'd and chased up and down, if he be able to go; but if he be not able, than tie him to the Rack, and let him be hanged with Canvis or Ropes so as he may stand upon the Ground on his Feet, and not suffered to lie down; than pare all his Feet so thin, that the dew come forth, and tack on the Shoees again, Stopping the Feet with *Bron* and *Hogs-graſe* boiled together, as hot as he can endure it, and wrap them in Cloathes even to the Pasterns, tying the Clouts taſt. Let his Dyet be thin, and give him no cold Water, and ſo ſoon as he is able, let him almoſt be continually walked, unleſs he be ſo long gone that his Hoofs begin to loofe, or that it break forth at the Croets of the Hoofs; then take two *Eggs*, as much *Bale Armony* and *Bear-flow'r* as will thicken the lame, and mingle them well tog'ther, and make thereof a Plaifer, ſuch as may cloſe each Foot round about, ſomewhat above the Croet, and bind the ſame ſaſt that it fall not away, or be removed for two days together; let the Soles of his Feet be cleaned and flop every day once, and the Croets but every two days, and not walk'd for loofing his Hoofs: but when he amendeſt, walk him upon ſome ſoft Ground fair and ſoftly; but if it break out above the Hoof, then take all the fore-parts of the Sole clean away, leaving the Heels whole, then flop him, and alſo dreſs him about the Croet, as aforéland; if this Grief (tho' it be very dangerous) be eljiſed in time, it may be cured.

For the Shoulder-ſight.

This is when the Pitch or Point of the Shoulder is diſplaced; which if it be, the Point will flick out farther than his Fellow, and the Horse will halt downright. The Cure is, To make him for to ſwim in a deep Water eleuen or twelve turns, to try if he be able to make the Joint to return to his right place, then make two tough Pins of Ash-Wood, of the bignes of your Little-finger, ſharp, and thruft in one of the Pins from above downward, ſo as both the Ends may equally flick without the ſkin; and if the Pin of Wood will not eaſily paſs through, make it way with an Iron Pin, then make two Holes croſt to the full Heels, ſo as the Pin may croſt the firſt Pin right in the midſt, with a right Croſt; the firſt Pin ſhould

be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent the other being round might pass the better without stop, and close the Inster together; then take a piece of a Line, somewhat bigger than a Whippcord, and at one end make a Loop, which being put over one of the Pins ends, so as it may lie between the Pins ends and the Skin, fasten the least end with a Pack-Needle and Thread unto the end of the Cord, so as it may not slip; but first anoint both the Pricks and Cord with *Hogs-grease*, then bring him into the Stable, and let him rest the space of nine days, but let him lie down as little as you can, and put a Paster on the Fore-leg, so that it may be bound with a Cord unto the Foot of the Manger, to keep the Leg in the Stable more forward always than the other: and at nine days end pull out the Pricks, and anoint the places with *Dishes*, or *Hogs-grease*, and turn him to Gras.

For a Truly Hoof.

First with an Instrument make hollow the Extremities of the Hoof on the outside till the principal Vein break: let the Blood run forth, then fill up the Hole with fine *Salt* and *Harts* steeped in *Finger*, and then bind them so that they shall not fall off: This is a sure way to make a hard and a sound Hoof.

For the Styling of the Hoof.

You must first cut the Hoof round about the outside, then pull away the Sole of the Foot, then let the part bleed well, then put in a Tent of *Weller of Egg*, bind the Foot about with a Band; after two days wash the Sole in *Finger* somewhat hot, fill it with fine *Salt* and *Toller* beaten together, cover it with *Harts* steeped in strong *Finger*. *Tristano* c.3.

For a Pinch or a Gall in the Wicket.

First cut out the dead Flesh, and make a Tent with the *White of an Egg*, and then wash the part with warm *Whip-*

White-wine, and afterwards anoint the sore place with *White-jewes Suet*.

A present Remedy for the Staggers.

When you find your Horse distempered in his Head, then take a piece of woollen Cloth and bind it fast to the end of a stick, being well rubbed with good *Barbary-sap*, and then put it into both his Nostrils with as much ease as you can, and withall draw it forth very gently again. This is a perfect Remedy.

For the Stranglers.

First, when you see the *Stranglers* growing, prick them under the Throat in the Morning, and after cover the Horse's Head with a linnen Cloth, and then rub him often under the Throat with *Fresh-butter* on the sore place.

For the swelling of the Fore-legs.

This Distemper cometh after great Pains and Labour; the efficient Causes are many, but principally, that he was travell'd when young, before he was cleared from his Humours; that he hath been travell'd when he was full; that he might also have too much Rest, and was not kept with moderate Diet; that he fed too much on green Meat; that he wash'd after Labour, and such like. But if the Horse be naturally fleshy-limbed he will never be free, but as soon as he is cured upon Travel he will swell again, and therefore such Jades should be geld and put to Cart, and never suffered to get Colt. The Cure is divers; Take of *Mallows* three or four handfuls, *Rose-ely* and *Sage* a handful, boil them in Water, and therunto put half a pound of *Butter*, and half a pint of *Sallet-Oyl*; being made warm, wash him twice a day for three or four days.

Another for the same.

Take *Hens-lack* and stamp it, and mingle it with *Sheep-dung* and *Finger*, and having made a *Plaister*, lay it all over the Swelling.

Another

Another for the same.

Take *Wine-Less* and *Cassia*, and boil them together, and put thereto a little *Wheat-flower*, and charge all the Swelling therewith, and walk him often and apace to heat him; and if this will not serve, then take up the great Vein above the Knee, on the inside, suffering him not to bleed from above, but from beneath: If he be clean and lean-limbed, use him, as I have expressit, to a little Butter and Beer warmed, and his Feet well stopped with *Comfrey* is sufficient after his Travel; but if he be so fleshy-limbed that this will not help, cut his Throat, and wash him with his own blood, and he will never after fwell.

All these Infirmities are Cured by this following Medicine:
Inputtments in the Ears. Ulcers in the Nose. All Wines
whatever. The Colic-Evil. The fswelled Stomach. Lust-
ring or Bursting.

For any of these outward Remedies or Swellings, you shall take a pennyworth of Pepper beaten to fine Powder, a spoonful of *Swine-graſſe*, the Juice of a handfull of *Ras*, two spoonfuls of any *Wine Vinegar*, and mix them well together; then if the Swelling be about the Horse's Head, Face, or Throat, you shall take *Flix-hair* and steep them therein, and stop it hard into the Horse's Ears, and stich the Tops together with a Needle and Thread, renewing it once in two days, till the Swelling go away: but if it be in any other part of the Body, then with this Ointment you shall anoint the grieved place twice a day, till the Infirmity conſume away. Now for the fswelling about the *Cods* or *Prick-Messers*, it shall be good before you anoint them with this Ointment, to bathe them with cold Water, as either by trotting the Horse into ſome deep Pond, or elſe by taking a Pail of cold Water, and dipping a Cloth into the ſame to bathe, clap and wash the Codſ therewith; then drying them with another clean Cloth, lay on the Ointment, which is a preuent Cure.

For a Grief in the Shoulder, that hath been there a long time.

The Cure is, Give him a fit on both sides, an inch under the Shoulder-bones, then with a Swan's Quill put into the fit, blow up first the one Shoulder, and then the other, as big as you can possibly even up to the Withers, and with your hand strike the Wind equally into every place of the Shoulders, and when they are both full, then beat all the windy places with a Hazel Wand over all the Shoulders, then with a flat slice of your Iron loosen the Skin from the Flesh; that done, rowel the two fits or cuts with two round Rowels of Leather with a hole in the midst, that the Matter may issue forth; and let such Rowels be three inches broad, and so put in, that they may be plain and flat within the Cut: Then take of *Hireb*, and of *Rofis*, of each a pound, of *Tar* hair a pint, boil these together, and when it is fower hot cool, draw all the Shoulders very thick therewith; that done, clay on as many Flocks as will stick, of the Horse's Colour, and every day cleanse both the Wounds and Rowels, and put them in again, continuing thus for fifteen days; then take them out, and heal up the Wounds with *Hog's-grasse* and *Tar-potice* molten together, renewing it until the Wounds be whole; but let the Flocks lie until they fall off, and let the Horse run at Grass at least half a year.

Of the Wrinking of the Shoulder.

This may proceed from a Fall, sudden or short Turning, such running out of some Door, or by some sudden stop, Strike of a Horse, or such like; which being done, he shall trail his Legs so him close as he greech. The Cure is, To let him bleed in the Breast as soon as it is perceived (and the sooner the better) three pints at the least, and to keep all the same blood in a pot, and thereto put a quart of strong *Vinger*, fix *Eggs* broken, shells and all, and so much *Wheat-flour* as will thicken that Liquor; put thereinto one pound of *Bale-Avony*, beaten into powder, and two ounces of *Sangais Draconis*, so as the *Flour* may not

be perceived; and if it be too stiff, soften it with Vinegar, then with your hand draw all the Shoulder from the Main downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels, all against the Hair; and let not the Horse remove until the Charge be finely taſſled to the Skin; then lead him into the Stable, and ſuffer him not to lie all that day, keeping him with a ſure Diet at laſt fifteen days together; and let him not remove out of his place, but only lie down all that time, and every day refresh the Shoulder-point with this Charge, lying ſtill new upon the old; and at fifteen or twenty days end, lead him gently, to ſee if he be amended; the which if he be, let him reſt for the ſpace of two Weeks without Travel: but if he be nothing amended, then rowl him with a Leather-Rowel upon the Shoulder-point, and keep him rowelled for the ſpace of fifteen days, renewing the Rowel, and cleaſing the Wound every other day: walk him up and down ve-
ry gently, always turning him on the contrary ſide; and if he go well, pull out the Rowel, and heal up the Wound with *Proprietary* and *Hage-greife*, and a Tent of *Flax*. But if the Hurt were ſo violent, that all this will not help him, then draw him chequer-wise with a hot Iron over all the Shoulder-point, and let him go to plow two hours every day in ſoft ground, where he may not be over-much strained; and if it be po-
ſible, let him be let blood as ſoon as he is hurt in that place Veins, and alio in the place, or as near as is poſſible, where the Hurt or Blow is, to the intent that no blood do coagul there, or that it tarry till the Flea become black with the Bruife.

Of Splicing of the Shoulder.

This alio may proceed from ſome Slip, whereby the Shoulder parteth from the Breast, and ſo leaveth a Rift or Rent in the Flea and Film under the Skin, which cauſeth him alio to trail his Leg after him. The Cure is, to put a pair of ſtraiſt Paffions on his Fore-feet, and to let him ſtand

114 The Gentleman's Comptal Jockey.

stand still in the Stable; then take of *Diataea* one pound, of *Sallet-Oil* a pint, of *Oil de Bay* half a pound, of *Fresh-Butter* half a pound, and melt them together, anoint the grieved place therewith round about the inside of the Shoulder, and within two or three hours after all the Shoulder will swell; then with a *Flam* strike all the swelling places, or with a sharp hot Iron, the head whereof should be an inch long, to the intent the Corruption may run out: and still anoint the same very often with the said Ointment; and if it gather to a head, then lance it where it is most soft, and tent it with *Hoggs-graft* and *Turpentine*, and a Tent of *Flax*.

A Remedy for the Spavin.

First, When the swelling appears first in the Ham, lift up the Thigh, and strike the principal Vein with a *Flam*, let out the Blood till no more will come, and then burn the *Spavin* long-ways and a-cross: Heal the Burn as you do for the swelling of the *Pastore*.

For the Cols-Evit.

The Cure is, Wash the Sheath clean with lukewarm *Vinegar*, draw out his Yard, and wash it also, then ride him to some running Stream up to the Belly, to allay the Heat, and do this lustily for a quarter of an hour, and so every day after for three or four days.

For the swelling of the Cols.

Take strong *Vinegar*, white *Chalk* well powdered, stir it well, and make a Paste, mingle good store of Salt finely powdered, and with that Paste anoint the *Cols* of the Horse about three times a day; and in few days this will help him.

For the Mastering of the Tard.

Take a pint of *White-Wine*, boil therein a Quarter of *Roch-Allium*, and with a Squirt thrust it up very far into his Yard, Squirt the same three or four times, to pierce and cleanse

cleanse the bottom from the Filth; and thus continue until he be whole.

For the Tarter.

Before you meddle with the place, first draw blood from his Legs, and then strike the Veins of his Legs on the outside and on the inside, but not on the place where the Blood comes forth: then wash the place with White-Wine, and mingle the Juice of *Frasuilla* with Powder of Galls and clear Water, and with this Liquor beat the *Hoggsplash* and *Liquid Pitch*, that all become like Honey; and having so done, anoint the Tarter, and in six times dressing, this will be a perfect help.

How to remedy the Wind-gall.

Casterize or burn them five times with a large hot Iron on both sides, and then open them overthwart only once; but if there be occasion to use it under the Knee on the forepart of the Leg, then you may cure it as they do other Burns.

An excellent and speedy Help for the Glanders.

First, you must take one ounce of *Fragrant*, boil it in a Water till it split and open in two, and after that mingle it with the Decoction, and two pound of *Wheat-Malt*, and give it the Horse to drink twice a day; keep him fasting. *Trub. 83.*

An excellent Remedy for the How in the Eye.

First, take up the *How* with a little Ivory Needle or Pen-knife, and then cut it all away with your Scissars; for the way to cure it, is to cut it out.

A rare Medicine for a sore Back, be it never so wrung with a Saddle.

Take of *Sheep-lung* to the quantity of three parts of your Plaster, and the fourth part of *Dry Wheat* and *Rye-Hay*, and mingle them well together, and let them boil a quar-

116 **The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.**

a quarter of an hour in good fair Water; and then lay it on warm, and at two or three times applying it will cure the Back. This is a tryed and approved Plaster.

An excellent Cure for the Scab and the fine Crupper.

You are to take a little *Frankincense*, *Nitre*, *Turmeric*, and the *Bark* of *Ash*, *Pistachio*, *Verdegras*, and *Hellebore white* and *black*, *Roast Birchroot*, and stamp them altogether with Yolks of Eggs and ordinary Ale; then after that boil them, and anoint the sore place.

For the Teling; of the Tail.

The Cure is, To wash the same with warm *White-Wine*, and anoint it with the *Oyl of Rose* and *Honey* mingled together; then put it up, and with a Codpiece or Truske keep it up still, and dress him every day once till he be whole.

For the swelling of the Cals or Stomes.

The Cure is, To let him Blood on both sides in the Flank-Veins, then take of *Oyl of Rose* and *Vinegar*, of each a pint, half a quatern of *Bale-Army* beaten into Powder, mingle them together, and being lukewarm, anoint the Cods therewith with two or three Feathers, and the next day ride him into the Water, and give him two or three turns, then bring him to the Stable, and when that he is dry anoint them again, and so continue until that he be whole, but if the Cods do swell through any Hurt, then cover them with a Charge of *Bale-Army* and *Vinegar* wrought together, renewing till the Swelling go away, and if it will then break, then putt it with *Mil-*
rojoram, till it be whole.

For a long Excrestion arising upon any Member of a Horse.

Take the Root of *Elecampane* well cleansed, and wrap it in a Paper and rost it, as you would rost a Warden, in hot Embers, as hot as the Horse can suffer it (for you

must

must not scald him;) after you have rubbed and chafed the Excretion, clasp this thereunto, and bind it on hard, and in once or twice dressing it will conserue the Excretion; also in a Morning and Evening you must rub the Excretion with the *Oil of Origanum*, which will conserue away the Hardnes.

To cure the running Trafle, or any Inflamation of the Sole of the Foot; to dry Scratches, Pains, and such like sore Sore.

Take old *Wine*, and burn it with good store of *Allan*, and keep it in a close Vessel by it self; then take a good handful or two of green *Nettles*, strong and keen, and spread them on some Plate, or other Vessel, and dry them either before the Fire, or in an Oven (after the Household Breal is drawn) then crush and bruise them into a very fine Powder, and look what a quantity of Powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten also into a very fine Powder, and mixt both very well together; then keep this Powder in a close Bladder, and when you have occasion to use it, fift wath the fore place with the *Wine* and *Allan*, made very warm, and the Sore throughly scoured; after dry them with a very fine Linen Cloth; and lastly, strew the Pounce of the Powder, so as that it cover all the Sore. And thus always do after Travel, or once a day in the time of Rest.

For Inuring or Barfing.

This is, when the Rim that incloseth the Guts is broken, so that they fall into the Cuds of the Horse, which is apparent to the sight and feeling: The Cure is, to put four Pasters on his Fore, as the Horse-gilders use, then bathe his Stones with warm Water and Butter, then raise them up from the Body with both your hands being closed by the Fingers fast together; and so holding the Stones in your hands, work down the Gut into the Body of the Horse, by stroking it downwards with your Thumbs, one after another, until that side of the Stone be so small as the other; then having returned the Gut into its right place, take a

weak

swollen List of two fingers broad, thoroughly anointed with *French-Batier*, and tye his Stones both together, or so nigh his Body as may be, not over hard, but that you may put your Finger betwixt ; that done, in all Quaetnes take the Horse away, and let him not be stirred three Weeks after, but the next day unloosen the List, and take it away, and every day after, twice or thrice a day, cast cold Water upon his Cods, to make him shrink up his Stones, and at three Weeks or a Month end, to geld him of that Stone ; which done, let him eat little, and continually dring Water, but a little at a time, till three Weeks be ended.

For the Ditch is the Graine of a Horse.

The Cure is, To take of *Wheat-flour*, *Turpentine*, and *Honey*, of each a like quantity, stirring it to make a little Plaister, lay it to the Sore to break it, and then lance it, and treat it with *Turpentine* and *Hogs-grease* as before.

All such Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine : All Head-Ach, All Frenches, the Let-Argy, the Stagger, the Peise, all Colds, all Coughs, wet or dry, all Shortness of Breath, Broken winded, Rotten Lungs, the Glanders, the Mourning of the Chine, the Lax or Loynes, the Bloody Flux.

For any Diseases of the Head, or Lungs, or other parts of them offend, you shall in any wise first let the Horse bleed in the Neck-Vein, and let him bleed much, that is to say, until you see the Blood change, and that the Corruption comes to Parcels ; then flanch the Vein, and take of *Affinita* as much as a Hazel-Nut, dissolve it in a Saw-cup of strong *Wine-Vinegar*, and then take fine *Flax-hands* and dip them therin, then flop the same hard unto the Horse's Ears, and with a Needle and Thread fitch the Horse's Ears together to keep the Medicine in from shaking out ; then take of the white cankerous Mote which grows upon an old Oak Pail or other Oaken Wood, a good handfull or more, and boil it in a Bottle of new Milk with a Root or two of *Elouengar* till one half be consumed ; then strain it, and press the Mote exceedingly ; it being

Jake-

blowarm, give it the Horse to drink falling in the Morning, and ride or walk him an hour after it gently; then set him up very warm, and having stood an hour, cover him Malt, which he will willingly accept, and eat heartily, and in any case sprinkle his Hay with Water. But if you shall perceive that he casteth foul and filthy Matter at his Noftrils, then you shall every Morning as soon as you have Given him the Drunch, take of *Auripigmentum*, two drams, of *Taffage* or *Catifast*, made into powder, as much; then with *Porterine* work them to a stiff Paste, and make little round Cakes or Troches thereof, of the compass of a Groat, but much thicker, dry them a little, then let a Chafingdish on the Coles, and laying one or two of these Cakes thereon, cover them with a Tunnel, such as you run Wine or Beer into Bottles with, that the Smoke may ascend through the same; and having made the Horse's head fast, put the Smoke to his Noftrils, and perfume him well with the same; and though at the first he be somewhat coy to take Smoke, yet having once felt the Smell thereof, he will take such delight therein, that he will of his own Accord thrust his Nose to the same. As soon as you have perfumed your Horse, you shall ride him forth till he begins to sweat, then set him in the Stable, and do as aforesaid; and let him not for a great while drink any cold Water either in his Sicknes or out of his Sicknes, but when you ride him after it; but if your Occasions will not permit you to do so, then you shall heat a Bottle of Water on the Fire scalding hot, and put it into a Gallon or two of cold Water, so that it may only take the Coldness away; then cast a handful or two of Ground Malt or Wheat *flour* into the same, and so give it the Horse to drink.

For surfeiting with Frumenty.

When a Horse hath eaten more than the Stomach can well digest, he is in such pain, that he is not able to stand, but lieth and walloweth, as if he had the *Blas*. The Cure is, to let him bleed, and to draw his Yard and wash it; to put a piece of a Clove of Gariick into it to make him jist; also to rale him behind, and to give him a Glister.

For the Navel-Gall.

The Cure is, Take *Soot* of a Chimney and *Turf* mixed together, and Plaister it once or twice a day.

Another remedy for the same.

If it be sore, Take a Pottle of *Verjuice*, three pennek-worth of *Green Caperas*, boyl it to the one half, and wash the Sore therewith, then fill the Sore with *Kel-lead*, and let it not be dressed again in three days; then you may dress him as you shall see cause.

Another Cure for the same.

If it be inflamed, cut it round about with a sharp Knife, even to the Bone, leaving no rotten Flesh behind; then take the *White* of an *Egg* and Salt beaten together, and lay it upon Tow, Plaister wise, renewing it so for two days together; then take a quarter of a pint of *Honey*, and an ounce of *Lordgreen*, beaten into a Powder, and boyl them together stirring them till it look red; and being warm, make a Plaister thereof with Tow, and wash the sore with *Finger* or *White Wine*, and lay that Plaister on it; and when it begins to heal, scatter the Powder of burnt *Cyder-fuels* on it, or else the Powder of *Honey* and *Flax'd Linen*, being made in a Cake and bak'd, to dry it up.

For the fusing of the Back.

This Hurt cometh by some Strain. The Cure is, That as soon as he beginneth to complain, which is by revling or rowling, in the hinder Parts, which is easly discerned, then take a *Sleep-strye*, as hot as it can be taken from the Sleep, and clap the fleshy side along his Back, and proficently putt many *Clothes* upon it to keep his back as warm as may be, and so let him continue till it begin to fiseill, then prepare another in like manner, and take away the old, and so continue him for twenty one days at least.

and let him not be travell'd, but still rest. And if this help him not, then draw his Back with a hot Iron right out, on both sides of the Edge of his Back, from the pitch of the Lottock, to a handful within the Saddle, and then overthwart; and let not the Strokes be deep, but so burned that they may look yellow; then presently lay on this Charge. Of *Pinch* a pound, of *Rais* half a pound, of *Bals-Armour* half a pound, made in Powder, and half a pint of *Tar*, and boyl them together in a pot, until they be thoroughly mingled; then being lukewarm, daub it very thick upon the burning, and clay as many Flocks, of the Horse's Colour, as you can make to abide, and let them remain till they fall off.

Of the Grieved or swelled Legs, or other Parts, by reason of the melting of the Grease, or other Accidents.

First, with the Fleam prick the Parts that are swelled; take a pint of *Wine-Lees*, of *Cowmilk-foam*, and a handful of *Wheat-flower*, and boyl them together till they are thick, then apply this Poultis very hot to the swelled parts, retowing it but once in 24 hours; then if this, in two or three times, draw it to a head, lance it and heal it, either with a Plaister of *Shoemakers-wax*, or else with the *Tail* of an *Egg*, *Wheat-flower* and *Honey* beaten all to a Salve. But if it do not draw to any Head, and yet the swelling continue, then take of *Pinch* a quarter of a pound, and as much *Engis-wax*, of *Rais* half a pound, of the Juice of *Hyssop* half an ounce, of *Deers-Suet* half a pound, of *Populace* half an ounce, of the drops of *Sinewax* half an ounce, and boyl all together in an Earthen pot; and after it is cold, take of *Briniflow* half a pound, of *Armoniack* an ounce and a half, of *Celias* as much, beat these into a fine Powder, and then incorporate them with the other, and boyl them all over again very well; which done, pour the whole Mixtue into cold Water, then roll it in seven big Rolls, quickewise; afterwards spread this Plaister upon a piece of Leather, and fold it about the swelled Member, or lay upon the swelled part; and if any thing will do it, this will affwage it, and afford much Strength to the Sinews. You shall by no means remove this Plaister, as long as it

will stick on. This Plaster, I must confess, is costly, and curious to make; but that Horse that hath it applied to his Limbs when he cometh from Travel, shall never be troubled with swelled Legs, or ever throw out Wind-galls: but if you will not be at such Cost, then continually both before and after the travel of your Horse, when he is in the House, several times in a day, lave and wash his Limbs or other swelled parts, with the coldest and clearest Fountain Water that you can get, and sometimes let the Horse stand in some cold clear River for the space of a quarter of an hour or more, up to the Knees, and Lasterels, but no farther. This Medicine, how poorly soever you may look on it, is of infinite Virtue; and though I write of cold Water, yet is the Operation hot and fiery; only this you must take to your Remembrance, that this Application appertains not to Impostumations, but to Strains and Swellings, which are without much Anguish.

How to keep a Horse or a Jockey from Tiring.

If you ride on a tiring Jade, and fear the pernicious Cruelty of this lazy Beast, then be sure to carry about you the fine scarie Powder of *Elecampane*, and when others Bait their Horses, or that you come to the place of Bait for your Horse, the first thing you are to do, is, to let him up warm, and do not walk him. After he hath been well rubbed, take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the Pow'r of *Elecampane*, and brew them together, then give it to the Horse with a Horn; which done, tye his head to the Re'x, for you need not care for Provender till Night, at which time Provender him will, and in the Morning give him Oats, or Bread, or both, in a plentiful manner; and being ready to back him, give him the former quantity of Ale, and the Powder aforesaid, and doubtless you shall find him to travel with great Courage and Spirit. Also, take a bunch of *Perry-Koyal*, and tye it to the Mouth of your Bit, or Snaffle, and you shall find it very comfortable to him. Now if your Horse, notwithstanding all this, do happen to tire, then you shall take off the Saddlir, and with the Herb called *Arjant*, rub his

back very hard, then laying *Asafoetida* also under the Saddle, to ride him; and if there be any Life in him, it will make him go, for this is a notable Torment, and the Smart is almost intolerable.

Two sorts of Balls to cure any violent Cold, or Glauler, to prevent the Hearts发烧, to purge away all molten Grease, to recover a loij Stomach, to keep the Heart from fainting with Exercise, and to make a lean Horse to be suddenly fat.

Take of *Aniseeds*, of *Cinnamon-seeds*, of *Fennel-seeds*, of *Cinnamon-seeds*, of the Powder of *Elecampane Roots* two ounces, beat them and scatter them to a very fine Powder, then add to them an ounce of the *Flower of Brimstone*, and take an ounce of the best *Juice of Liquorice*, and dissolve it in half a pint of *White-Wine*; which done, take an ounce of the *Oyl of Aniseeds* and as much of the *Syrup of Cutifast* and of *Sallet-Oyl* and, of fine *Life Honey* a pint, then mix all this with the former Powder, and with as much fine *Wheat-flour* as will bind them together, then work them into a stiff Paste, and make thereof Balls somewhat bigger then *Five* to *Walnuts*, and to keep them in a close Gallypot, for they will last all the Year; and when you have occasion to use it, take one and anoint it all over with *Sweet-Butter*, and to give the Horse every Morning one, in the manner of a Pill, and ride him a little after it, then feed or water him abroad or at home, according to your usual Custom; and thus do (if it be to prevent Sicknes) for three or four Mornings together; but if it be only to take away an Intemperie, then use it at least a Week or more; if it be to take away molten Grease or Foulnes, then instantly after his diet, or in his Heat only; but if it be to fatten a Horse, then use it at the least a Fortnight, or more. Now if you find any difficulty of the giving of it as Pills, you may then at your Pleasure dissolve one of those Balls either into sweet Wine, Beer, or Ale, and so give it the Horse to drink with a Horn. But if it be to fatten, and take away Intemperie, as, the running *Glauler*, or such like, then besides the Balls, you may make these second Balls. Take *Wine-flower* six pound, or more, as shall suffice to

make stiff the Paste, then take of *Aniseeds*, of *Caraway-seeds*, and of *Cathamus*, of *Fenugreek*, and ordinary *Brimstone*, of each two ounces, of *Sallet-Oil* a pint, of *Honey*, of *White-Wine* a Pottle, beat those hard. Simples to a fine Powder, and scarfe them, then with the rest make them into a stiff Paste: then of this Paste take a Ball as big as a Man's Fist, and dissolve it into two or three Gallons of clear cold running Water, by washing and laying the Paste therin, and so give it the Horse to drink at the ordinary watering times, or any other times when he is disposed to drink, which can't be too often; then ride and warm him a little after it: then when the Water is spent, do not cast away the Bottom, but filling up the Vessel again with new fresh Water, dissolve another Ball therein; and thus do for fourteen days together at least, and you shall see wonderful Effects arise. This Water scowreth, cleansieth, and feedeth in an admirable manner. And the other lesser Balls first spoken of, purge the Stomach or In-trails of all Foulness, void molten Grease, fortify nature so powerfully, that it leaves behind it no evil in the Body. And this small Ball (if it were for my Life) would I give to a Horse immediately upon his drawing forth, if he went either to run, to hunt, to use any violent and extreme Labour.

Another way how to fatten a Horse suddenly.

There is another way to fatten a Horse suddenly, which I have found to be both good and certain. Take of *Elaeocarpus*, of *Caraway-seeds*, of *Turmeric*, of *Aniseeds*, of each two ounces, of *Groundflet* an handful, boyl all these very well with three Heads of *Garlick*, cleansed and stamped in a Gallon of strong Ale, then strain it well, and give the Horse a quart to druk lukewarm in the Morning fasting, then ride him that he be warm, set him up warm, and thus do for four or five Mornings, and then turn the Horse to *Grafs* (if the time of the Year be suitable thereunto) and he will feed heartily. But if the time of the Year serve not for *Grafs*, then you must keep him in the House, and over and beside the drink before shewed, you shall take fine Powder of *Elaeocarpus*, and the fine Powder of *Caraway-seeds*,

one-fifth, a like quantity, mix them well together, then every time you give your Horse Provender, which should be at least thrice a day, in the Morning, Noon, and at Night, take half an ounce of this Powder, and speise him it by little and little into his Provender, for fear of Offence, till it be all eaten up. And thus do for fourteen days together at the least, and you shall see the Horse prosper in a wonderful and strange manner.

For the Hid-Lawnd.

The Cause hereof is sudden Cold after great Heat; when the Pores are open the Cold entereth, and maketh an Attraction of the Sinews, so as the Horse seemeth to go or Travel with great Grief, his Skin being as if it were starched, being shrank and clinging to his Ribs. The Cure is, to let him Blood in both the Flank-Veins, being next the girdling place and the Flanks: then take a quart of good *White-Wine*, and put thereunto three ounces of *Sallit-Oyl*, and of *Cannabis*, one ounce, of *Asafoetida* two ounces, of *Liquorice* two ounces beaten into a Powder, and give it him warm, then let him be rubbed half an hour together; cover all his Back with a Sack, thoroughly soak'd in a Tub of Water, and the Water wrung out of it, and upon that cast many Cloths, and gird them fast unto him to bring him to a Sweat, which is the only and chief thing to recover him, and keep him good Mashes, and every day let him be so used; for seven or eight days together, give him much sodden Barly and Beans for his Diet, and green Malt on the floor, and after the eight days let him Blood in the two breast Veins, about a pint, then give him a pint of Sack, and quarter of a pint of *Sallit-Oyl*, our pennyworth of the best Treacle, and ride him until he sweat, then presently set him in a warm Stable and cloth him very warm, and at Night give him a good Mash of Malt, with the Powder of *Brimstone* to the quantity of two spoonfulls.

For the Navel-gall.

The Cures thereof are divers, and so they ought to be; for Medicine is to be ministred according to the hurt, as it may be more or leſs. If it be but galled, take ſome of a Chimney and ſalt mixed together, and Plaſter it once or twice a day.

Another Remedy for the ſame ſore.

Take a Pottle of *Verjuice*, three pennyworth of green *Cayenne*, boil it to the one half, and wash the Sore therewith, then fill it with red Lead, and let it not be diſſed of three days, then diſſeſ it as you ſhall fee cauſe.

Another Cure for the ſore.

If it be ſo hurt as that it ſwell and is impoſthummed, then lance it on the nethermoſt part of the *bladder*, ſo that the matter may have iſſue downward, for if you ſhould lance it aloft, then the Corruption that remaineth will fituſate; if you find the Concavity deep, then make a Tent of *Flax*, and dip it in this Salve. Take of *Deers-Suet*, of *Wax*, of *Tar*, and of *Turpentine*, of each three ounces, and one ounce of *Resin*, mingle them together, and tent the Wound; and if you ſee any dead Flesh grow in it, then ſprinkle the Powder of *Verdegras* upon it, lay upon the Head of the Tent a plaſter of a Yolk of an *Egg*, *Honey*, and *Wheat-flour*, and thus diſſeſ it Evening and Morning until it be whole.

For the Worms.

They are ingendred of raw and evil Humours: there are three kinds of them; the Worm, the Bot, and the Trencher. The Horſe will lie down and wallow when they ſit on him, his breath will ſtink and his Mouth be clammy. The cure is for to give him a quart of new Milk, and haſt a pint of *Honey* in it Blood warm; this will make them ſtir from gnawing of him, because they will ſuck therewith until they are ready for to burst; then the next day gi-

him this drink following. First take a quart of wort, or of the strongest A'e, then take a quarter of a pound of *Fer6*, half a pound of *Savin*, half a pound of *Stomach*, stamp them, and put them together with two spoonfuls of *Brimstone*, and as much Chimney *Soot* beaten to Powder, and let them lye in steep two hours, then strain them and give the Horse a little warm bridle him and let him stand six hours after without Meat, and there is no doubt but the Horse will be quiet, for the strength thereof is such to strain the Maw, as that the Bot will not meddle, but fly from it, but it doth not kill them. After these former Drinks given him, the third day make him purging Pills, *viz.* Take of *Lard* a pound, laid in Water two hours, take nothing but the clean Fat thereof; stamp it in a Mortar, and thereunto put of *Liquorice*, of *Ale-hale*, of *Fenugreek*, of each beaten into Powder three ounces; of *Aliss* in Powder two ounces; and of *Aerwick* an ounce, knead them into a Paste, and make six balls thereof, then the Horse having fasted over night, give him the next Morning three of these Pills, anointed with *Honey*; when you have opened his Mouth, catch hold of his Tongue, hold it fast till you have buried in one, and thrust it down his Throat with a rolling-pin, and then let his Tongue go till he hath swallowed it down, and so do with the rest, and keep him close from all Air, and at Night give him a strong Mash, and warm Water three days after; my reason is, for that these Balls will purge out of his Body all the Bots and Worms, and all the Humours that breed and cherish them; so as that your Horse will be perfectly clean: and you shall find most of the Bots alive, when they are purged; for you cannot kill them with Medicine, but only make them to forbear vexing of him; for so long as his Maw refleth so bitter and stinking, they dare not feed on it, but upon other Humours.

For the Lax.

Take of *Bess-flower* and *Bale Armony*, of each a quatern, mingled in a quart of red Wine, give it him lukewarm, and after it let him drink warm Water, with *Bess-flower*,

but if that will not stay him, then give him half a penny-worth of *Allum*, beaten into Powder, and *Bole Armony* beaten small, in a quart of Milk, stirring them till the Milk be all of a Curd, and this will stop him.

For Coffivensis: or Belly-burst.

Take of the Decoction of *Mallows* a quart, put it to half a pint of Oil or so much Butter, an ounce of *Benedick Luxatice*, and pour it into his Fundament with a little Horn, and hold his Tail colfe to his Fundament, whilst another doth lead him, and so keep it in him as long as you can, and after keep him warm and give him warm Water to drink.

All these Infirmities are cured by the Whey only contained in this following Medicine: The Bloody-Rifts, the Bladders, the Lungs, all Mouth-Careys, all Hurts in the Mouth, the Tongue-burst, the Paps, the Teste-ach, the Shodding of Hair, the Fester-worm.

Take of *New-Milk* three quarts, a good handful of *Pistain*, let it boil till a full pint be consumed; then take six ounces of *Allum*, and an ounce and a half of *White-Sugar-candy*, both being made in a very fine Powder, six spoonfuls of strong Wine-Vinegar, and put them into the Milk; then let it boyl a little till it have a hard Curd, then drain it, and fave the Whey wherewith you shall first bathe the Sore; the Whey being warm, then with a clean Cloth dry the Sore, and apply this Salve to it: Take of *Terpentine*, *Yellow-wax*, and *Hogs-grease* ground to a fine Powder, an ounce and a half; mix all these together on a soft Fire, and then put it in a Gally-pot, and let it cool; but in case where the Bruise is not broken, nor is likely to break, you must apply another Medicine, which I shall hereafter acquaint you with.

For the Yellow.

The Cause hereof is also the abundance of bad Humors; the Cure is plain; let him Blood, if you see it yellow, a Pottle, then give him a quart of *White-Wine*, of *Saffron* and *Fenugreek* of each half an ounce, and the juice that is wrung out of two handfuls of *Seladine*, and being Blood-warm, give it him, and keep him warm, and with good Mashes, wherein put two spoonfuls of the Powder of *Brimstone*; some will give in this drink the green ordure of Geesestrained.

For the Surfiting and Foundring of the Body.

The Cause of this Disease is over much eating after Labour, whilst the Horse is hot, whereby his meat not being digested, breedeth evil Humors, which by little and little do spread through all the parts of the Body, and at length oppresses the whole Body; and so do take away his Strength that he hath not power to go or move his Joints; and being laid is not able to rise, whereby he wanteth the use of pissing, as also of dunging; Nature being overcome, then doth the Humour rule the body to the destruction of it: In like manner it is when the Horse being over hot with Travel drinkest so much as the Cold thereof suppressteth his natural Heat: the Cause is, that the evil Humours being predominate according to their Nature, being heavy and moist, immediately fall down into the Horse's Legs and Feet, and there reit, which if not prevented will make great gordy Limbs, as the Pains, Cratches, Spavins, Wind-galls, casting of the Hoofs, and such like. The Cure hereof must be according to your Effects that are wrought in the Horse, if it be perceived, as when the Hair beginneth to stare, that he will be chill, and shug for Cold, forsake his Meat, hang down his Head, quiver after cold Water, and after two or three days, begin to cough, which is a sign that his surfeit is not great, and that he may be thus cured; Cover his Belly with the Glister last mentioned, and give him this Drink: Take of *Malmsey* a quart,

of *Sugar* half a quartern, of *Cinnamon* half an ounce, of *Liquorice* and *Aniseed*, of each two spoonfuls beaten into fine Powder, put into it *Malmsey*, and give it him Blood warm, keep him warm, let him drink nothing but warm Water, four or five days after let him Blood.

For the Collick.

The Cause of this Disease is twofold; either it proceeds from abundance of humours, or of Wind; and although it be Wind, yet I judge the Original to be an Obstruction of humours which will not suffer the Wind to have its free passage, which otherwise Nature would expel as his Enemy. The Cures may be divers, and because it is a Disease that few Jockeys understand, I will set down several Cures, that if one thing cannot be speedily procured, another may. First, it may be an Obstruction, for that the Horse hath the stone, and cannot stale: for this take a quart of White-Wine, half a pint of *Bar-sel* beaten small, two ounces of *Perly-sel*, of *Smallage*, *Saxfrage*, the Roots of *Philadelphus*, *Grindewell-sel*, and *Brown-sel*, of each two ounces, beaten to fine powder, a good handful of *Water-Cress*, and lay them in steep all Night, and in the Morning strain them clean, and put into it a little *Black-Soup*, and a little *Baster*, and ride him until that he begin to sweat; then set him in a Stable with a great quantity of sweet Litter under him, and cloath him warm, and so let him stand Meatless seven or eight hours; then give him dried Oats and warm Water, with a quantity of *sallet-Oyl* to drink; and before he have this Drunk let him fast all Night.

Another Cure for the same.

Take a pound of *Malmsey*, of *Cloves*, *Pepper*, *Cinnamon*, of each an ounce, of *Sugar* half a quartern, and give it the Horse lukewarm, and Labour him upon it an hour that he dung and stale, keep him to warm Water; but if he be a stoned Horse, there is not any better thing than for him to have his full desire with a Mare.

Another for the same.

If you think that it proceeds chiefly from Wind, it may be so occasioned when he is ridden hot and set up cold; he will pine away, and forsake his Meat; keep him empty all Night, in the Morning take a quart of *White-Wine*, four ounces of *Fenugreek*, seven ounces of *Bayes*, as much *Corn-Pepper*, an ounce of *Grains*, an ounce of *Ginger*, two handfuls of *Water-Cresses*, a handful of *Sage*, a pound of *Seagreen*, and wring out the Juice; Another of *Mint*, stamp them and put them into a pint of *White-Wine*, and let them stand on the fire till they boyl, strain them out, and give it him Blood-warm with a little *Honey*.

For surfeiting with Prevention.

When a Horse hath eaten more then his stomach can well digest, he is in such pain, as that he is not able to stand, but lyeth and walloweth as if he had the *Bore*, the danger whereof I have written. The Cure is, to let him Blood, and to draw his Yard, and wash it, put a piece of a Clove of *Garlick* into it, to make him piss; also to rake him behind, and give him a glister with the Water of *Sullen-Mallows*, *Fresh-Butter* and *Sallet-Oyl*; keep him warm, and let him eat very little for four or five days.

These Infirmities are cured by the following Medicines: All Cramps of sinews, all Cramps whatsoever, your Neck-crick, the Shoulder-Splas, all swelled Legs, the Over-reach of the Back-Sinew, all Head-Galls, Wrenches in the nether Joints, all Bruises unbroken, all Strains whatsoever.

Take strong *Vinegar* or *Paste-grease* or *Paste-grease*, or each a like quantity, and boyl it on the Fire; then with *Wheat-Bread* make it into a hot Poultis; and being so warm as the Horse may endure it, apply it twice a day to the grieved place; but in case that the foremeis be where you cannot bind any Poultis unto it, then you shall only take *Paste-grease*, and being molten very hot, with the same *bath*.

bathe the Horse twice a day, and give him very moderate Exercise before and after his dressing; it will not only take away all Pain and Anguish, but also remove all Swellings, Guondings, or any other Sore whatsoever.

For the Wens or Knobs in the Body.

The Cure is, Take of *Mallows*, *Sage*, and *Red-Nettles*, of each a handful, boyl them in running Water, put thereunto *Batter* and *Henry* a little quantity; and when that the Herbs are soft, bruise them, then put thereunto of *Oyl of Bayes* two ounces, and two ounces of *Hogs-grease*, and warm them together over the Fire; which being well stirred and very hot, make a Plaister as big as the Wen, upon a piece of Leather, and so renew it for the space of eight dayz, always laid as hot as may be; and if it come not to a head, then lance it very deep, afterwards heal it with very clean washed *Turpentine*, the *Tolk of an Egg*, and a little *Saffron*, well wrought together, with a Tent of *Flax* well rowled therein, renewing it every day.

Another Cure for the same.

Take a pound of strong *Lye* and *Sap*, a quarter of *Pistill Roman*, an ounce of *Sal Armoniack*, as much of *Red-Allum*, and boil them together till they are thick, and use it for an Ointment.

Another remedy for the same.

Take *Giffacum*, the strongest, and lay it on with *Cassus* three or four times, and it will take it away.

For the falling of the Crest.

The Cure is, First let the *Crest* be supported to stand upright; then on the contrary side that it falleth, draw his *Crest* the depth of a Straw with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron should be half an inch broad, and make your Beginning and Ending somewhat beyond the Fall; but the first

first Draught must go all the way upon the edge of the Main, even under the Roots of the same, bearing your hand right downward into the neckward, then answer that with another Draught beneath, and so far distant from the first as the Fall is broad, compassing all the Fall; and betwixt these two Draughts, right in the midst, draw another Draught, then with a Button of an inch about, or else crosting the same with your Iron, burn at each end a hole, or else crois the Spaces betwixt the Draughts; the Reason is, that by the pursing up and shrinking of the Skin on the contrary side, the Crest may stand upright: Some will afterwards anoint the same with Fresh-butter, or something to affwage the Heat; but this is a way to enlarge the Skin, and for my own part I hold it best until nine days are past, then to take away the Scab will not be amiss.

For the Crick in the Neck.

There are many Opinions how this should come to a Horse, and therefore many means ought to be used before any extreme means be used; first therefore, if the Horse have such a Crick that he holdeth his Neck strait, and cannot have the use to lift it up and down as was usual, then let two Men on each side rub his Neck, rub him stoutly; sparing no pains till his Neck be grown very hot; which being done, put a Bit into his Mouth, and make tryal if he can or will rein in any seauely Proportion; the which if he do, then it is to be concluded the same came by some Cold or some Strain; and then I would have him let blood on both of the Breast-Veins, and all his Neck throughly anointed and laboured with *Aquavite* and *Nerve-Oil*, that it may drink into the Skin, and two Sheep-skins wrapt about him with the Wool next to the Neck to keep it in a great Heat, and so to rest twenty-four hours; and if he do not by this means amend, but carryeth his Head still down and feedeth slowly, then make a hole in his Forehead close under the Foretop, and thrust in a Comet to raise the Skin from the Flesh a handful deep, then take a Goose's Feather well anointed with *Hogs-grease* to keep the hole open that it may run ten days together, and every day

day twice let the Feather be cleansed and new anointed, and let his Neck be still laboured with rubbing, covered very warm to keep it in a Sweat, and if you perceive no Amendment, then draw him with a hot Iron from the Root of the Ear on both sides of the Neck through the midst of the same, even to the Breast, a straw deep, that both ends may meet on the Breast; but if he carry his Neck awry on one side, then only draw the contrary side with a hot Iron, and fail not every Morning when he is fasting to ride him with a bit till he sweat, and the hotter he is, the more pull in his Rein, and when he cometh to the Stable, cool him moderately, and rub him throughly.

To draw the Wolves Teeth.

These are two little Teeth growing in the upper Jaw next to the great grinding Teeth, which hinder the Horse from grinding his Meat, so as he will let it fall unchewed, and sometimes you shall see some Teeth so long and over-hanging in his Jaws, that they race and cut his Checks, so that he cannot feed. The Cure is, Tye the Horse's Head to some Rafter or Post, his Mouth being opened with a Cord, so as you may see every part thereof, then take a round Iron Tool half a yard long, made at the end like a Carpenter's Gouge, and with your Left-hand set the edge of that Tool at the foot of the Wolves Teeth, on the outside of the Jaw, turning the hollow-side of the Tool downward, holding your hand steadily, then with a Mallet in your Right-hand strike on the head of the Tool, a pretty hard blow to loosen it, and make it bend inward, then wrench the Tooth outward with the inside of the Tool, and thrust it out of his Head; and do the like to the other Tooth, and fill the holes with Salt; and if any Tooth do over-hang the nether Teeth, to the Prejudice of the Horse, then with your Mallet and Tool pare the Tooth, or as many as over-hang for hurting the Horse's Mouth.

For the swelling of the Gums.

The Cure is, To make him to bleed well in the Pallate of the Mouth, and also to scarifie the Gums that the rank

Blood

Blood may come out, and then rub them throughly with Vinegar and Salt.

Of the Risis, or Corruption in the Pallate of the Mouth.

Take sharp *Flieg* & and *Salt* and wash the same, and then anoint it with *Honey*. For the *Languor* or *Hallers* in a Horse's Mouth, every Farrier can cure it.

For the Cancer in the Mouth.

This proceeds from the eating of filthy Hay, that Cats, Dogs, and other Vermine have pift upon, which will cause the Horse's mouth to be fu'red or charred, so that he will not eat. The Cure is, to let him bleed in two great Veins under the Tongue, and to wash his mouth with Vinegar and Salt, and to give him new Bread that is not hot.

For the Ulcer in the Mouth.

Turn up the upper Lip and jag it with a Lancet, that it may bleed, and wash it with Vinegar and Salt.

For the Cancer in the Mouth.

Wash the sore place with strong Vinegar, made thick with the Powder of *Allam*, two or three days together, to destroy the exalcerate matter; then take a quart of fair *Water*, of *Allam* four ounces, of *Honey* four or five spoonfuls, of *Mallie* Leaves, *Sage* Leaves, and *Columbine* Leaves, of each a handful; boil all these together till half be consumed, and then every day being warmed, wash the same two or three times a day, and it will heal it.

For the Barbels or Paps under the Tongue.

The Cure is, to clip them away, and to wash them with Vinegar and Salt.

For the Hurt of the Tongue with a Bit.

The Cure is, To wash it with *Allium-water*, then take *black Bramble Leaves* and chop them with *Jard*, and put them within a Clout, and make them as round as a Ball; then dip the same in *Honey*, and anoint the Tongue therewith until it be whole.

For the Giggs in the Mouth.

They are Swellings with black Heads, growing in the inside of the Lips. The Cure is, to slit them and thrust out the Corruption, and to wash the same with *Vinegar* and *Salt*.

These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following: Manginess is the Main, Manginess in the Tait, the Mallander, the Scallader, the Pains, the Scratches, all kibed Heals. The Leprosie, the Farcyn, the General Scab, all Lice or Nit, or other Vermin.

First, in any wise you shall let the Horse blood in the Neck-Vein, and suffer him to bleed very well (because the Corruption of the Blood is the only Breeder of these Infirmities) having with a Knite, Lancet, Curry-comb, Hair-cloth, and such like, opened the Knots and Piftules, and rubbed away all Scurf and Filthines, laying the Sores open and raw, as it were ready to bleed; then you shall take of *Tallow Arseick* or *White Mercury* beaten to a fine Powder, or *Beigage* and clarified *Hogs-grease*, of each a like quantity, and beat them well together till they come to a perfect Ointment; then having tied the Horse's Head up fast to the Rack, in such wise that he can neither lick nor bite himself, with this Ointment anoint all the Sores and other offended places very well over, holding some hot Bar of Iron, or Fire-shovel, heated against the same, that the Ointment may the better and speedier soak in; and being thus anointed, let him stand the space of two or three hours at the least tyd as aforesaid; which done, take of

the strongest Urine you can get, and with the same wash away all the Ointment, wherefoever it was laid, and then untye the Horse, and put him to his Meat; and thus do once a day, till the Sores dry up and begin to wafte away.

For the Bleeding at the Nose.

This may be derived from many Causes which cannot be truly known, as proceeding from within the Body, and therefore I shall only direct how to cure the same. Take a pint of *Red-Wine*, and put thereinto a quarter of *Bale-Armour* beaten into a fine Powder, and put the one half into his Nostrils that bleedeth, holding up his Head, and this may do well if in the Nostril or Head there be the original Cause; the next day give him the rest into his body, and that will surely bind his Body, and it may help the bleeding inward.

Another Remedy for the same.

Let him bleed in the Breast-Veins, of each a pint, for that is most likely to turn the Course of the Blood; take two or three spoonfuls of his Blood, and put it into a Sawcer, and boyl it until it be dried to a Powder; then take the Powder thereof, and blow it into his Nostrils, and if it come of a Wound, put it into the same, and it will presently stanch it; as also *Horse-dung*, *Affet-dung*, *Hags-dung*, *Sage-leaves* bruised and put into the Wound; or take of *Frankincense* an ounce, of *Alues* half an ounce, and beat them into a fine Powder, and mingle them throughly with the *Whiter of Eggs* until it be as thick as *Honey*, and with soft Hares-hair thrust his Nostrils so full, as that it cannot fall out. And lastly, some will throw cold Water upon him against his Hair, and 'tis likely that the over-cooling of him that way may stop the Flux thereof: And this a worthy experienced Friend of mine did use to do, if at any time such a sudden Accident did happen.

Of the Pinet.

This Distemper proceedeth from the Corruption of Blood: The Cure is, Draw them with a hot Iron right down the midit, from the Root of the Ear so far as the Tip of the Ear will reach being pulled down, and again under the Root of the Ear, with a hot Iron draw two strikes on each side like this Figure, \pm ; then in the midit of the first line lance them with a Lancelet or Razor, taking hold of the Kernels with a pair of Pinchers, but beware that you touch them not with your bare Finger; pull them so far out with your Pinchers as that you may cut the Kernels out without hurting the Vein; then fill the Hole full of Salt.

Another Cure for the same.

Take *affrey*, *honey*, and *Vine-leaves*, stamp them together, and fit the Sidew under the Ear, and lay a Plaister thereunto two or three days.

For the Cancer in the Nose.

This proceeds from corrupt Blood, and confiur'd Flesh, which makes it raw within, and in the end will eat the Griffle thereof; it will also cause the Horse to bleed at the Nose, and to yield a filthy Savour. The Cure is, Take of green *Capers* and *Altura* of each a pound, and of white *Capers*, one quarter of a pound, boyl these in a Pottle of running Water until it be half confiur'd, then take it off, and put into it half a pint of *Honey*, hold up his Head with a staff, but not too high, and with a Squirt, squirt the Water, being lukewarm, three or four times together into his Nostrils, and give him liberty to blow out the filthy matter least you choak him; and with a Stick and a Rag wafh his Nostrils twice a day until he be whole.

Another Cure for the same.

If you see the Cancer be of great heat and burning in the Sore, with exceeding Pain, take the Juice of *Parfleur*,

Lettuce,

Lettice, Serrai, and Night-shade, and wash the sore with a fine Clout, and with a Squirt, wash the same, and this will kill it.

For the Cancer of the Eye.

This proceeds from the Corruption of the Blood, by reason whereof you shall see many red Pimples both within and without the Eye, and through Inflammation the Eye will look red, and be full of Corruption. The Cure is, To let him Blood (on the side of the Neck that you see the Eye is grieved) a Pottle or more, if you see the Blood very foul, and the Inflammation great, then take three pints of fair Water, and Koch *Allum*; and green *Copras*, of each half a pound, and of white *Copras* an ounce, and boil them until half be consumed, then once a day, being made warm, with a fine Cloth cleanse the Eye, so that it look raw; and this do every day until it be whole.

For the Impurum in the Ear.

This may proceed from some Blow or evil Humours: The Cure is, Take Powder of *Lisfet*, and of *Wheat-flower*, of each half a pint, of *Hogs-graſſe* one pound, warm them in a pot on the fire, until they be thoroughly incorporated, by continual stirring, then take a piece of white Leather, somewhat bigger than the Impurum, and spread it, being very warm, as far as will cover the swelling, and renew it every day until it break, then lance it, so as the Corruption may go downward, and tent it to the bottom with a full Tent of Flax, dipt with this Ointment following: Of *Microſtiam*, of *Oil of Life* and *Turpentine*, of each two ounces, and mingle them thoroughly, then make him a biggin of Canvas to cloſe in the Sore, so as the Tent and Ointment may abide within, renewing it every day once until it be whole; but if the pain be in the Ears without any great swelling, which may be only with Cold, then take *Black-wool* dipt in the *Oil of Gemmule* and thruft it into his Ears.

These Infirmities are cured by this Medicine following, all Light Galls, to skin Sores, to dry up Humours.

First, bathe the Sore place with hot molten Butter; then strow upon it the Powder of Rosin for a day or two: lastly, Take a spoonful or two of very thick Cream, and with the Soot of a Chimney bring it to a very thick Paste; then spread it upon the Sore, and it will heal, dry, and Skin in a short space.

Of the Foul Evil.

This proceedeth likewise from the same Causes, and groweth like a *Fiftail* betwixt the Ears or the Nape of the Neck, you shall perceive it by the swelling; if it be not broken, ripen it with Plaister of white *Hogs-grease*, as tho you would scald it therewith, and make him a Biggin to keep him very warm, and renew the Plaister twice a day very hot and it will ripea the sooner; then where it is softeft, and where the Corruption may best issue forth, with a round hot Iron as big as your little-Finger, two inches beneath the soeft place, thrust it upwards, so as the point of the Iron may come forth at the ripest place, then Tent it with Flax dipt in *Hogs-grease*, and lay also a Plaister of *Hogs-grease* on the same, renewing it four or five days; then afterwards take half a pound of *Turpentine* clean washed and dry'd from the Water, with two *Tulks of Eggs* and a little *Saffron*, and mingle them together; then with a Quill search the depth of the Hole, and tent it with a Sponge so big as the Hole to the bottom, and so thrust it with a Quill into the Wound to the bottom, and a warm Plaister of *Hogs-grease* to cover it, renewing it twice a day; but when the swelling ceaseth use no plaister.

For Impostumes in the Ear.

This proceeds from some Blow or evil Humours. The Cure is, Take a powder of *Lisfield* and of *Wheat-flower* of each half a pint, of *Hogs-grease* one pound, warm them in a Pot

a Pot on the Fire, until they be thoroughly incorporated, by continual stirring; then take a piece of white Leather, somewhat bigger than the Impostumation, and spread it, being very warm, as far as will cover the Swelling, and renew it every day until it break; then lance it, so as the Corruption may go downward, and tent it to the bottom with a full Tent of Flax, well dipt in the Ointment following; of *Melissatum*, of *Oil of Life* and *Tarpeatum*, of each two ounces, and mingle them thoroughly, then make him a Bignon of Canvas to close in the Sore, so as the Tent and Ointments may abide within, renewing it every day once until it be whole; but if the Pain be in the Ears, without any great swelling, which may be only with Cold, then take black Wool dipt in the *Oyl of Camomile*, and thrull it into his Ears.

For the Cancer in the Eye.

This proceeds from the Corruption of Blood, by reason whereof you shall see many red Pimples both within and without the Eye, and through Inflammation the Eye will look red, and be full of Corruption. The Cure is, to let him Blood, (on that side the Neck that you see the Eye is grieved) a Pottle or more; if you see the Blood very foul, and the Inflammation great, then take three pints of fair Water, and of *Rach-Allum* and *Grana-Coperas* of each half a pound, and of *White-Coperas* an ounce, and boyl them until that half be confirmed, then once a day being made warm, with a fine Cloth cleanse the Eye, so as it look raw; and this do every day until it be whole.

For the Paw in the Eye.

This Distemper is known unto all Farriers; no doubt but it is engendred from some gross Humour descending out of the Head: the Cure thereof is, to pull both the Eye-Lids open with several Threads stiched with a Needle to either of the Lids, then catch hold of the Hair with the stich of another Needle and Thread, and pull it on so far as you may slay it with your Finger, to the intent it may cut

243 **The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.**

cut all round to the breadth of a Penny, and leave the black behind, for by cutting away so much of the fat and black of the Eye, the Horse many times becomes bluer-eyed, and therefore you must ioyne the Fat which is the wath of the Eye, and the Film, wherin the Eye groweth, but cut between the Film, and the Cruth, and then squirt in a little *White Wine or Beer*.

For Lascivick Eyes.

For as much as they are so called, I am content so to continue the name; and it is said that the Horse becometh blind at certain times of the Moon, and thereupon most men do gather that his Sight is good or bad, according to the natural Course of the Moon; but the Truth thereof is from the natural Sight of the Eye, which is a blawith Eye or Sight; and all Horses that are so fighted, after extraordinary Heat and Travel, will be blawith, and have a Film overgrow the Sight, so as he cannot see, although he be cured, but upon the like occasion will fall blind again. An experienced Friend of mine always cured this Disease by thrusting *Tatty* into the Eyes with his Finger; but if you lay upon the Temples of his Head a Plaister of *Pitch, Rags, and Maffick*, and then with a sharp knife make two slits on both sides of his head an inch long, somewhat towards the Nose, a handful beneath the Eyes, not touching the Vein, and with a Crochet loose the Skin upwards, the breadth of a *Groat*, and thrust therein a round piece of *Leather*, as broad as a two-penny piece, with a Hole in the midft, to keep the hole open; and look to it once a day, that the Matter may not be flopped, but run ten or eleven days, then heal it with *Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and Wax* boyled together, with *Flax* dipped in it, and take not the Plaisters off till they fall away; then burn him with a small hot drawing Iron, made like a Star, with a Hole in the midft in each Temple-Vein where the Plaister did lye, in this manner **: and if this help not, let him to Cart: beware you heare no Colts of Horses that are so tyed, for upon every hard Travel they will be blind.

These Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine: all Wounds in general, all Swellings, all Wounds with Shot, burning with Lime, Mad-Asp biting, Fowling, Fretting, Sublising, all Infe Hairs, cutting of the Hoof, Hoof-burn.

Take of *Tarantine*, *Wax*, and *Hog-grease*, of each a like quantity; first melt the yellow *Wax* and *Hog-grease*, upon a soft fire; then take it off, and dissolve the *Tarantine* into it, and stir it very well together; then put it into a Gally-pot and let it cool; and with this Salve tare or plasters any Wound or Sore and it will heal it. Also with the same anoint the Crowns of the Horses Hoofs, and putting *Whet-leas* unto it, it being boyled hot, stop your Horses feet therewith, in case either of Founder, or Fretting, Sublising, or such like Infirmities.

For the Staggers.

The Cause of this Disease is, for that the Brain and the Stomach are united and chained together with certain Sinews, and thereby interchangable communicate their damage, so as when the Stomach is opprested with the gross and tough Humours, or some strong Vapour, as when the Horse hath eat some strong Herb, as the Wild *Perfume*, or such like, by the strong vapouring Spirits proceeding out of the Stomach to the Brain, oppressing the same, as the strong vapourous Spirit of *Wine*, *Aquavite*, and such like, do the brain of Man, he is dizzy and reelineth as if he were drunck; at the first he doth only reel and stagger as if his back were swayed, and will eat his Meat, but afterwards he will forsake it, and not be able to stand. The Cure is, let him blood in the Temple-Vein, one handful under the Eyes, then take *Garlick*, *Herb-grass*, a little *Leaven* and *Bay-leaves*, stamp them together, and then put them into a little quantity of *Aquavite*, and put it into the Horse's Ears, and bind them close, and so let it remain twenty four hours, and wash his Tongue with *Flourgar* and salt; let him not drink any cold Water, and once a day gently walk him.

Take

Another for the same

Take *Bitter Almonds* one once and a half, of *Ox-Gall* two drams, of *Black Hellebore* stamp one half penny-worth, of *Gratis*, of *Casterum*, of *Vinger*, of *Vernis* five drams; sethe them together until the *Vinger* be consumed; strain it, and put it into his Ears, as aforesaid: but bind them with a woollen List, not with a rattling String.

A Sovereign Medicine called the Emperor of all Medicines concerning Horses.

Take of *Wheat-meal* fix pounds, or as much as will bring all the simples following to a stiff Paste: of *Aniseed* two ounces, of *Cannabis-seed* fix drams, of *Certhamus* one dram and a half, of *Fenagruke-seed* one ounce and two drams, of *Brynjolne* an ounce and a half, and of *Sallet-Oyl* one pint and two ounces, of *Honey* one pound and a half, of *White-Wine* four pints; and all this must be made into a very stiff Paste, the hard Simples being pounded, and scattered to a fine Powder, and so mixed with the sweet Simples: After this Paste is made, it must be kept in a very clean Cloth; and when you have occasion to use it, you shall take thereof as much as will make a round Ball as big as a Mans Fist; and this Ball you shall by continual washing, laying, and squeezing, dissolve into a Gallon of running Water, to give it the Horse to drink, either after his Heats, or any violent Labour or Exercise, or when he is sick, poor, lean, or inwardly diseased, and full of foul Surfeits; and then you shall suffer him to drink thereof as much and often as he pleaseth; the Colour of the Water will offend him to take it, therefore at the first offer it him in the dark, of which when he hath but once tasted, he will then forsake all Water whatsoever to drink of this only. Now touching the Virtues which appertain to this Medicine, they are these: First, if your Horse be never so poor, lean, surfeited, and diseased, if you give your Horse of this Water with the Ball dissolved in it as aforesaid, it will in fourteen days not only cleanse and scour

him

him, but also purifie the Blood, enliven and quicken him in a wonderfull manner. Secondly, It will be a means to prevent any Sicknes for a long time. Thirdly and Lastly, It will make him continue in good Case, feed lustily, and gain Flesh space, though before he was very Lean.

A safe Purg to prevent Sicknes.

Take a quarter of a pound of red *Sauvies*, and the like quantity of fresh Butter, make them up, and give them as the former, or Rosemary Leaves bruised and mixed with Butter or green Figs, so ordered; and let those that undertake the Cure of Horses observe particularly these five things.

- (1.) To what Diseases Horses are Inclivable.
- (2.) From what Cause they proceed.
- (3.) By what means the Causes do accrue.
- (4.) The Tokens by which any distemper is known.
- (5.) And how to Apply apt and seasonable Remedies.

For the Cramp, or Convulsion of the Sinews.

The cause of this Disease, is over-much Fulness, or very great Eating and Feeding, much Rest, want of moderate exercise; or by over-much Bleeding, extream Labour, or extream Cold. That which proceeds from great Fulness and Rest, comes suddenly. That which comes by Empyema, or Penury, goes on by little and little. I have seen a Horse had his Head swry, and Neck so stiff, as if he could not bow any manner of way, nor the strength of Men open his Jaws, or Mouth, without breaking of them; His Eyes hollow in his Head, and the fleshy parts thereof, turned backwards; His Tongue so benummed, that he could not eat nor drink, but by sucking of his drink by little and little, with his Lips: All which comes by full and foul Feeding, and too much Rest; being notwithstanding, exceeding fat when he dy'd. The cure of this Disease is, to take a great quantity of Blood from him; make him bleed, and give him a Gifte of *Mallows*, *Camomile* and *Peppas* boyled in Ale.

How to order him after this, for the recovery of his Limbs, &c.

Let him be rubbed by two or three lusty strong Men, and keep him in a very warm Room; then take two quarts of strong *Ale*, and two pound of *barry Soap*, and boyl them together till they look like *Tar*, and anoint and rub all his Body therewith, so as that it may drink it in; then Cloath him, and stuff his Head and Neck close, and all the parts of his Body, to bring him into a great Sweat; give him a pint of *White Wine*, two ounces of *Allum*, and half an ounce of *Agarick* infused therein, beaten small, putting therein three spoonfuls of clarified *Hogs-grease*; and, if that will not do, give him every day a *Gulfer*; keep him warm, and well rubbed; then give him *small Ale* to drink, wherein *Mallows* and *Liquorish* have been boyled; let his Diet be small, but sweet and good.

For a Cold in the Head.

The cause hereof, proceeds from some Heat, or flauding too much still; or from having some Air piercing his head when he is hot; or from some Humours congealed after long Rest, and full Feeding; or through his wanting of moderate Exercise to expell the same. The Signs are, a continual distilling Rheum, watery Eyes, or his short drawing of Breath at the Nostriis, when the Canes and the Passages of the Breath are stopped. The Cure is, Put upon his Head a double Hood, and every Morning when he is Fasting, ride him; take two *Gaie Feathers* dip'd in *Oil of Bay*, and thrust them up into his Nostriis; through the ends whereof, with a *Needle*, put two Threads, to fatten the same to the Head-stall, so as the Feathers cannot fall out; and to the Snaffle or Bit, that he is ridden with, fatten a root or two of *Polypodium of the Oak*, which hath been steeped all Night in *spicy Oil*, and every time you ride him, anoint the same with the said Oil; and when he cometh home, put on his Head the double Hood, and Persone him hot with *Frankincense*, casting a Cloath over his Head. Use him thus Nine days together, and give him

WARM

warm Water, or good Mashes, during the said Nine days; for all Rheums having continuance, are dangerous, and many times (having continuance) Remedyless, and leave behind them a worse Disease than themselves.

These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following. The Poll-Evil: The swelling after Bloud-letting: The Weather-burn: gall'd Backs: Sis-falls: The Naval Gall: Fistula's: Biting with Venemous Beasts, or Worms.

For any of these filthy Imposthumations, Galls, or Swellings, you may take the *Earth-lorn* of a *Mad-wall*, which hath no Lime in it, but only Earth, Straw, or Litter, and you shall boil it in strong *Wine* *Finger*, till it become very thick, like a *Poultice*; then, being very hot, apply it to the Sore, renewing it once in Twelve or Twenty four hours; and it will not only ripen and break it, but also Draw it, Search it, and Heal it most perfectly; as Experience will manifest.

For the Glanders.

The original cause of this Disease, is the Rheum, which being an abundant Moisture, and naturally very cold, at length congealeth, (according to the nature of Cold) and then proceedeth to Kernels, and so to Inflammations; which become so great in the end, that they seem to strangle and stop the breath of the Horse; from whence he is said to have the *Strangler*; and by continuance of time, the same perish either the Liver or the Lungs, by a continual distilling of putrid and corrupt Matter: The Signs are apparent to every Man that hath Sight, and the diversity of Medicines, infinite. The beginning always of this Disease, is taking of Cold, after too much Heat; the which cannot be avoided from a Horse that hath full Feeding, and great Rest; more especially, if his Diet be naught; or by the use of continual Travel upon a full Stomach; or, before his Body be made clean after long rest; for the Handing Pool is ever Muddy. The Cure is, *First*, Clear his Head, as is prescribed for the Cold of the Head, in every part,

48 The Gentleman's Complete Jockey.

(if he be able to be Rid or Walked) that he may receive breath; then give him this Drink: Take a pint of *Malmsey*, and six penny-worth of the best *Treacle*, and a quarter of a pint of *new-fresh Butter*; then perfidiously rub him under the Jaws with plenty of *Hogs-grease*, and leave it thick anointed; then make him this Poultis: Take two handfuls of *Mallows*, a handful of *Wormwood*, as much *Ros*, and as much *Smallage*; a quart of *Wheat-straw*, and a quart of *Hogs-grease*, boil them together, and stir them continually in the boiling, until the *Hogs-grease* be almost consumed; and being as hot as may be suffered, bind it under his Jaws and Thropel, and wrap all his Head very warm, leaving Air for his Mouth and Nostrils; then Air him again with *Frankincense*, and keep him warm in the Stable, and so let him rest with that Poultis twenty four hours: The next Morning give him a quart of the best *New-Ale*, with a spoonful of the *Powder of Liquorish* and *Aniseeds*, and a good piece of *Butter*, blood warm; then rub his Nostrils with a clost bound to the end of the Stick, well anointed with Oil of *Bay* and *Butter*; then remove the Poultis; and if you find the Kernels and Inflammation to be very soft, Lance them through, and stop the holes full of *Hogs-grease* and *Turpentine*, boiled hot together, and soft *Tow* boiled therein; then warm some of your Poultis and bind it on, as before, but not altogether so hot, and so let it remain until the next day.

How to Order the Herbe after this, for a perfell Cure.

Keep his Head warm, as before. If he will eat, give him clean sweet *Oats*, steeped in *New-Ale*, or *Malmsey*, if he will eat them, and *Wheat-straw*, but no *Hay*: Give him no cold Water for Nine days, but good *Mallows*, if he will take them: Keep him in a spare Diet, and every day, gently walk or ride him, if he be able; then keep him warm after it, and if it be possible, let him Sweat every day a little, and after rub him very dry, and let him not drinck in his Sweat. In his Provender, take of the root of *White-Lilly*; of the root of *Enula Campana*, and of the root of *Polypodium of the Oat*, very finely cut or chopped, the quantity

quantity of two Spoonfulls, every Morning that you give him Provender, and be sure that he be hungry and eager of Provender when you give it him, and so continue for Nine days; and before that you keep him very hungry, and (as hath been said) with spare Diet. At the Nine dayes end, give him his purging. Drink: Take a quart of *Whine-Wine*, or of strong *Ale-wine*, an ounce and an half of *Atter*, beaten into Powder; half an ounce of *Ayeric*; two spoonfulls of the Powder of the root of *Enula Campanula*; three spoonfulls of Honey; brew them well together, give it him blood-warm; and keep him warm: Within six days after, let him blood, and if it be good, take but a quart; but if very bad, take two quarts at least. After this, use him both in Feeding and Labour, moderately, and he will afterwards be in perfect Health.

The Mourning of the Chine, its Cause and Cure.

The Cause hereof, is great Heat, and afterwards taking of Cold: And, *First*, It beginneth with *Rheums*; then the *Glaunders*; and afterwards the *Mourning of the Chine*; (as it is usually termed) but more truly and effectually, it beginneth with the *Rheums*, which proceedeth to Inflammation of the Liver and the Lungs, by continual distilling upon them; then to the *Glaunders*, which is the Imposthumeration thereof; and lastly, to an *Exsitation*, which abruptly, and untimely, is called the *Mourning of the Chine*. The Signs to know the Disease, are these: 1. The continual distilling of *Rheums* in the Head. 2. The continuing *Knots* betwixt the Jaws. 3. The keeping of his Hair without falling. 4. The continual running of thick stinking Matter at the Nose. 5. The fathning and growing of a knob as big as a Walnut, to the inside of one of the Jaws; which if so, commit his Carkans to the Crows, for he is past all help. The Cure for such a Horse as may be curable, is to follow these Directions. For the *First*, which is *Rheums*, the cure I have mentioned for the Cold in the Head. For the *Second*, which is a congealed substance, gathered into two knobs betwixt the Jaws, it is cured to the *Glaunders*. For the *Third*, which is keeping still his

Winter Coat, and not cutting off his Hair, let him Blood often, until you see that he hath pure and fine Blood, and give him good Mashes, made very strong with Malt; and put in his Provender, *Polygalium of the Oak*, small cut; the root of the *White Lilly*, small cut, of each a good quantity, if he will eat; and strewed in also, a quantity of *Liverwort*; and, if he be a Horse of value, at every time, a six penny weight of *Rahurj*; and every Morning, being Fasting, give him a pint of the Drink prescribed for the preservation of the Lungs, and keep him only with *Wheat-straw*, (but not Hay) and old sweet and clean Oats.

The manner of Ordering him after this.

Every Morning, after he hath taken that clean Drink, ride him two or three Miles. For the *Fourth*, which is the thick running at the Nose, continually clear his Head, as hath been prescribed for the Cold in the Head; and so in every part, as the rest are prescribed, only adding of purging Drinks; 1/2. After all these prescribed Orders, give him two several Mornings, a pint of *White-wine*, an ounce and an half of *Alliæ*, half an ounce of *Agarick*, two drams of *Liquorish* and *Asafoetida*, and a spoonful of pure *Hoggs-grase*, warmed and well dissolved together; and after he hath purged, the next day let him Blood in both the Breast-Veins, the quantity of a quart, and still keep him with good Mashes, and moderate Travel: Give him every Morning fasting, for Nine days after, a pint of that Dink which I prescribed for the clearing of the Lungs. For the *Fifth*, If you find no amendment, but a knob grown to his Jaw, then you must give him a Purge with Pills, as I have prescribed; and if that help him not, then without all doubt, he is Remediless.

These following things are most excellent to put into Horse Provender, to preserve them from Diseases.

The Powder of *Woolf's Liver*; the Powder of *Emula Campana*; the Powder of *Polygalium of the Oak*; fine cut pieces of *Rahurj*; the powder of *Brimstone*, made fine; the powder

Cer of Liquorish; *Au* *seeds*, *Fennel*, *Turnerick*, *Bay*-*berries*, *Long*-*Pepper*, *Agrimony*, *Common* *lime*, *Wormwood*, *Seuen*, *Linfest*, *Smallage*, *Parfley*, *Rue*, *Hysop*, *Cold*-*fat*, *Hasthounds*, and such like.

Brown Wine, the Cough.

The Causes why a Horse draws his Breath very short, may be many; as Sicknes, grst Fulnes, or violent Exercise: But the reason of the cause is, For that the Heart being the only hottest part of the Body, from whence the Arteries and Veins do carry the heat thereof to every part of the Body; (and therefore 'tis truly said, to be the Chariot of Life) when that by Sicknes, Fulnes, or violence of Exercise, is choaked, and as it were, smothered with great heat, then do the Lights, being the Bellows to draw Breath, according to that Office that Nature hath ordained them unto, presently labour with all Violence, to draw it, to cool and comfort the Heart, and so consequently, all the Members and parts of the Body, to fill all the empty corners with Air, which naturally and in predominant Qualities, is moist; and when they have drawn sufficient Breath, the drynes and heat, by the moisture of the Air, is quenched; which being so, then doth the Creature draw Breath leisurely and coldly, and not before; but so long as the Heart is opprested by the violent heat of Sicknes, or by grst Fulnes, or violent Exercise, the Canes, Pipes, and Passages for the Breath, are almost stopp'd and choaked up; then do the Lungs labour very extream thick, to preserve the life of the Creature, which is the Heart; and therefore it is said to be the first thing that Liverth, and the last that Dieth. And to make the same a little plainer, Observe a Horse that is Broken-winded, (as the usual term is) and you shall find, that he fetcheth his Breath much shorter, when he is kept in the Stable only with dry Meat, than when he goeth to Gras; and the only reason is, the coldnes of the moist Food, which keepeth the Heart and all the Body in coolnes, because the Humours that proceed from the digestion of Gras, are cool and moist, according to the natural qualities of Gras, and raw Herbs.

For a broken Wind, the Cure.

Take the *Dust* of a *Bay* dried to Powder, a Spoonful; *Digested*, two ounces; the juice of *Spanish Liquorish* dissolved, an ounce, in a quarter of a pint of *Ale*; put these into a pint of new Milk, and give it him warm fasting; repeat it for five or six Mornings, and ride him a gentle pace after it, if the Weather be warm, or any ways seasonable, without letting him water, or eat any thing; then put him into a warm Stable, give him a Malt of *Oats* and split *Bacon*, and keep him clean Littered, and free from any noisome Scents: And the Lungs by this means, as also the Wind-pipe, being cleansed, the Breath by degrees, if you do not over labour, heat, or ride him in too much rainy Weather, will return to it: fouger easie and moderate breathings.

A most sovereign Drink to preserve a Horse's Lungs and Liver clear; the most excelling Knowledge is a Horseman or Farrier.

Take the *Tartar* of *White-Wine* *Less* (which is no other than the *Less* of *White-Wine* dried to Powder) an ounce and a half, of *Hyg* two handfuls, of *Celts* just two handfuls, of *Horehound* one handful, of *Endive* *Cayenne* *Roots* an ounce, four *Liquorish-sticks* bruised, *Aniseeds* an ounce, red *Sugars* only four ounces, boyl them all in a quart of *Ale*; and when it is half boyled, put to it of *Hys*-water twice Distilled, one pint, boyl them again, then strain it, and give it him very warm to drink; the charge hereof is very small. If you have a delicate Horse, and have Cleared him, and Dieted him, (for I would not have the Master to be at any extraordinary Charge with a Jade) then every Morning that you shall Hunt him, or Exercise him, give him Fasting, a pint of this Drink, and so continue him, until you find him clean and in perfect Breath. The Lungs most principally ought to be kept clean, as they continually draw fresh Air to them, filling all the empty corners with Moistness; and that is the reason why Horses are broken-winded,

winded, because the Lungs are imperfect to do thir Office. And likewise your broken-winded Horses, when they are kept only with a dry sort of Meat, do draw their Breath much shorter than when they go to Graft, because Graft is naturally Cold and Moist; and thereby his Heart being the more cold, the Horse draweth his Breath much better, and more at length: But if the Horse be clear, empty, and found in Body, then doth he always draw his Breath alike: From which ground of Reason, three things may be collected and observed: The *First* is, That the Horse's Head be kept clear from all Obstructions, (the which evermore cometh of Cold) which greatly hindereth the drawing of Breath in the Body. *Secondly*, That the Skin of the Horse be kept clear and open, to draw Breath at the Pores of the Skin into the Body. *Thirdly*, That the *Canales Palmarum*, the Pipes or Lanes of the Lungs, be not opilated or stopped through viscous Phlegm, or tough Humours, like Bird lime, or with Imposthummation in the Pipes, and so become Putrified; every one of which, in continuance of time, will destroy the Horse.

Of the Signs of the inward Sicknesse of Horses.

To know the true Signs of the Sicknesse: If they proceed from the first occasion, which is *Heat*, then the Signs are these, *First*, heaviness of Countenance, swelling in the Limbs, Scouring, or Loosenesse of the Body, in the beginning of the Sicknesse; and Driness, or Costiveness in the latter end; short Breath and hot, with a loathing and forsaking of his Meat. If it proceed from the second occasion, which is *Cold*, then the Signs are also heaviness of Countenance; either dull, or else closed w^t Eyes; hard Boils, or big Pustles betwixt the Chops and the root of the Tongue; and sometimes a hard swelling up from the Chops to the roots of the Ear; a rotten and moist Cough, the Horse ever chewing some loose filthy phlegmatick Matter in his Mouth, after his Coughing, which in one respect is no evil Sign, because it sheweth a rotten Cold that is but newly gotten, and soon to be cleansed; whereas, to cough clear and hollow, and not to chew after it, sheweth

a dry Cold, that is of long continuance, sore, festered, and hard to be recovered. *Lastly*, His Body will fall away, and when he drinketh Water, it will issue forth at his Nostrils; his Eyes will be ever mattery and running, and his Hair rough and stirring. If it proceed from the 3rd occasion, which is the Surfeit of Meat and Drink, either natural, or un-natural, then the Signs are these: *First*, Head-aches of Head and Countenance, in such a violent manner, that the Horse can hardly lift his Head from the Manger; a dull and dead Eye; a staggering and reelng Pace, and (if the Disease be far grown) a frantick and mad Behaviour, as biting the Rack and Manger, and at such as shall come about him; sometimes biting at himself, and beating his Head against the Wall, Boards, or Ground, and other frantick Passions: But if the Disease be less contagious in the Brain, but more inwardly settled at the Heart, then the Signs are *Yellow*s in the Whites of the Eyes, and in the inside of both the upper and the neather Lips; (if the Disease be far gone) then a *Yellow*s over all the Skin, and a continual faint Sweat doth break forth: And therefore by all means remember, that tho' the alteration of Colours is un-natural, yet withal you must understand, that it is not so in all cases: If the Dapple-gray, in process of time, turn to White; the dark Iron-gray, to a bright colour; the Black, to an Iron-gray, and such like, that this is a natural, and no un-natural alteration, and so no signs of Sickness: And therefore not to be deceived at all, or to be doubtful, acquaint your self with the true colour and complexion of your Horse, which you shall best discern when he is at the pride and height of Lust; when he is wan-sen, proud of flesh, and smooth, sleek, shining: And when you shall see this Complection alter in part, or all, then ever expect some Sickness. As you thus acquaint your self with the Complection of your Horse, which I include in the Colours, so you must also have a fended knowledge of his Countenance and Gesture; and to that end, you must be cauetel to mark and note them, in all his Actions and Motions, as well within doors as without, as well in his play, as in his rest; at his times of Feeding, and at his times of Exercise: You shall note the cheerfulness of his Eye,

Eye, the carriage of his Head and Neck ; which are his airy Characters, and which be his pleasant ; and when he biteth for Wantonness, or Offence : And then you shall best find out in his Feeding, in his Exercise and Playing, in his Dressing ; and if at any time you find any of these Characters fail on a sudden, and that his Gesture is more lumpish-heavy, then call your self to an account of what you have done, either in Exercise, Feeding, Airing, or Ordering ; for there is no doubt but there is Difterperature and Sicknes approaching, if it be not prevented.

Observations to be taken from the Horse's Feeding and Dung, as to the State of his Body, &c.

Having thus acquainted your self with Complexion and Countenance of your Horse, so you must also not be ignorant, but observe divers other outward and inward Qualities, for they are the greatest Light that can be, both to Health and Sicknes ; and to this end, you shall especially mark his Filling and his Emptying ; that is, his manner of feeding, and the manner of discharging his Body. In his feeding, whether he eats with a good Appetite, or a weak Stomach : The first is Healthful, the latter unwholome : For if he eat with a good Appetite, he will Neigh and call for his Meat before it come ; when either he seeth his Keeper, or a preparation for feeding, as fitting the Oats, chipping of the Bread, or the like ; he will receive it cheerfully and greedily, shaking his Head, and shewing other signs of alacrity and rejoicing ; which Qualities after he hath used, if on the sudden he refrain, and so receive his Meat dully and unpleasantly, it is a great sign of Sicknes. As in his feeding, so you shall mark his Qualities in emptying ; as, the time, the place, the substance. The time, as whether he emptyeth in the night time better than in the day : The place where he emptyeth, better in the House, or Abroad ; or when you are Mounted, whether before you begin Exercise, or else after some gentle motion, or stirring ; whether at the Stable door, or at some un-usual places by the way, or in the ground where you give him his Exercise. Lastly, For the substance, whether it be

much

much or little; if it be much, you must forbear Exercise, and make him empty the oftener; if it be little, then you may fall to labour at pleasure: Whether it be good or bad, and that commonly falleth out according to the Food he eateth,

Things to be inferred from the before going Observations.

If it be clear, firm and pale, with white Grains, in complexion like sweet *Sap*, then it is wholesome; if it be Black, it sheweth Heat in the Body; if Greasy, then it sheweth Foulness; if Red and hard, it sheweth Coffiveness; if Pale and loose, then inward Coldness. And as you thus observe his Ordure, so you must also observe his Meane, whether High, Low, &c. As these qualities of Feeding and Empeyng, so you shall note his qualities in Rest and Watchings; that is, in his lying down and standing up; what hours and times he observeth for either, and how long he continueth in them: And if at any time you find sudden or gross alteration, then be afflared of some Sicknes approaching; and thus do of any other particular Quality in your Horse, (which you shall observe in his Health) for it is impossible to nonname all; and if you find them suddenly to surprize, it is doubtful that there is some Sicknes following. As you thus observe the Complexions and Qualities of the Horse, so you must observe his natural Customs and Conditions, and how in his livelyhood and best health, he standeth affected: To particularize or name them, I cannot, because they proceed most from hidden Inclinations, or else accidental Apprehension, which, by continuance of time, grow to natural Habits: And any of these, when they shall increase, or fail, are true prognostications of Distemperature and Sicknes. Many other signs of Sicknes there are; as the not casting of the Coat in due time: Hide-bound: Continual distillike and Leanness, where there is good Feeding. But on these I shall enlarge my self hereafter.

Some other choice Observations, for the preventing of all inward Sicknesse.

The preventing of inward Sicknesse, consisteth in two special Observations and Considerations: *First*, To prevent it before it come, that it may not offend at all. The *Second* is, To take it at the first appearance, and so to prevent it, that it ariseth not to any great danger or hazard. To prevent Sicknesse, that it offend not your Horse at all. Tho' I have already treatel on this Subject, yet I shall not omit to write what is of excellent concernment to the Practitioner. When you put your Horse to Graft, every three or four days before you turn him out, take blood from his Neck-Vein, then the next day after, give him a pint and a half of *Muscaline*, and half an ounce of the Powder of *Distemper*, or three quarters of an ounce of the *Horse-Mithrilate*, and then by degrees to abate his Cloaths. You shall also observe, when you let your Horse blood, to proportion the quantity you take from him, according to the goodness or badness of the Blood, for the loss of good Blood, is unwholsome, and doeth hurt; and to preserve ill Blood, is dangerous and noyse. Also, if you observe when you take Blood from your Horse, to receive it into a Vessel, and stir it about continually, as the Horse bleedeth, to keep it from clotting; then having bled him, take the Blood and besmeare it all over the Horse's Back and Body, you shall find it wonderful wholsome to him, for it comforteth his Body, cleareth his Skin, and breedeth a rejoicing in all the Horse's internal parts. Now if you have no determination to put your Horse to Graft, and yet you would prevent inward Sicknesse, then you shall observe once in two or three Months, (when you have the best leisure to rest your Horse after it) not to fail to give him *Muscaline* and *Distemper*, and *Horse-Mithrilate*, as was before shewed, and not to let him Blood at all; for this very Potion is the greatest purger and purifyer of the Blood that can be, and voideth all that yellow cholericke Matter, and other evil and undigested Humours, which corrupt the Blood. Now you are to observe here, that although I only prescribe

Muscaline,

Muscadine, wherein you shall dissolve your Powder, or *Mithridate*; yet know, that when you cannot get *Muscadine*, or other sweet Wine, that then you may take strong Ale, or Beer, but in a greater quantity; for whereas you take but a pint and a half of Wine, you shall take of Beer or Ale, a full Ale quart; as for the Powder of *Mithridate*, you shall keep the first quantity already prescribed; and if you warm your Beer or Ale a little on the Fire, it will not be amiss, but better. Now to take a Sicknes at the first Approach, and to prevent it, that it may not arise not to any great danger, you shall by all means observe to look well into the Occasions of Sickneses, which are already shewed, and into the Signs of those Occasions; and if you find your self guilty of any of them, or that the Horse discovereth any of the former Signs, then presently let him Blood, and three several Mornings after, give him the Drink or Potion before prescribed, and undoubtly it will prevent all the force of Sicknes, and restore the Horse to his Strength, and good estate of Body.

To refine the Blood, and save the Liver from Infecion.

Take of *Fallopium* of the Oak, made very clean, cut it into small pieces, then take a handful of *Liver-wort*, cut it in small pieces, together with sixpenny weight of *Heath-herb* cut small, and every Morning, for three or four days in a Month, give it the Horse in his Provender, very early, two or three hours before his watering; and once in half a Year make tryal of his Blood how pure it is, and accordingly Minister help if need be. This Medicine is highly esteemed of by those that have experienced it.

Of bleeding in any Heart-Sicknes, or in any ordinary inward Sicknes.

I will now descend to the Cure of these inward Sickneses: And though every several Sicknes have a several Cure, yet I will draw all here into one faldon, but certain and infallible prov'd Method, ever found prosperous and fortunate. Whenever, by Signs before rehearsed, or

other

other Accident or Knowledge, you shall find your Horse grievously pained with inward Sicknes, the first thing you shall do open his Neck-Vein, and receive some of the first Blood into a Pewter Porringer, which, if you set it in cold Water, will presently discover the Foulnes and Putrefaction; then let the Horse bleed well till the Blood change; neither must you be nice or tender in this Action, because you must understand that all inward Sicknes in Horses draw their Effects from the Putrefaction of the Blood only. And this is the Reason. It is certain that the Horse, of all other Creatures, hath no natural Vessel into which to receive the scummy and putrefied matter which ariseth from corrupt and Cholerick Blood, but it is either voided in excrential Humours, or moderate Exercise and Sweats, or else by immoderate Exercise and violent Labour. By too much Repletion and Fulnes, by unwholesome Food and evil Dyer, or by some other natural Defect, this Cholerick Corruption increaseth and overflowing, it presently, and in an instant overspreads the whole Body, having its Course through every Vein, and so discoloureth the Skin, and makes all the outward parts yellow, especially the Eyes and inside of the Lips; also mixing with the better Blood, and confounding the Strength and Virtue thereof, it brings a general Faintnes over the Body, and in the end suffocateth the Heart; of force there must follow sudden and certain Mortality; and hence proceeds those sudden Deaths of Horses, for which our weak Farriers can give but a foolish and idle Account. But to return to the purpose; after you have taken away good store of Blood, and (as you imagine) all, or at least, the most part of that which is corrupt, then set him up in the Stable, tying his Head to the Rack gently, and at Liberty, neither so high that he shall be compelled to rest his Head upon the Bridle, nor yet so low, that he may thrust his Head into the Manger; and thus you shall let him stand at least two hours.

How to prepare your Horse after bleeding to receive what is necessary for removing dangerous Sicknes.

If the Sicknes be not contagious and dangerous; admitteth

nister not any Potion to him that day, because the Vein being opened, and all the numerous Powers and Faculties of the Body disturbed, it will be a double Vexation to his Spirits to go also through the working of the Portion; therefore in this case, the Sicknes not being violent, you may forbear farther Administration, and only after the Horse hath fafted you shall give him fuch Food as he will eat, whether it be Hay, Bread, or Corn; and always provide that it be ſtrong, savory, ſweet, dry, and clean drift; as for the Quantity it matters not, for a ſmall Pittance at that time will maintain him; beſides Emp-tineſs is no great Diſpleaſure. At high Noon you ſhall give him a ſweet Maſh of Malt and Water made in this manner: Take half a peck of good Malt well ground, and put it into a Pale by it ſelf, then take a Gallon of faire clear Water, and ſet it on the Fire; then when it is come to the hight, that it is ready to boyl, put as much of it to the Malt as will moist and cover the Malt all over, and ſtir them exceeding well together, crushing the Malt with a flat Rudder as much as you can, ever and anon taſting it with your Finger, till it be as ſweet as any Honey, and then cover it over as cloſe as you can, and ſo let it ſtand and ſtove for two or three hours at the leaſt; then the hour being come in which the Horse is to receive it, uncover the Maſh and ſtir it about; but finding it to hot, then put to it ſome clear cold Water, that may temper and al-lay it, but in any wife not ſo much as may take away any part of the Sweetneſs; and in this tempering, with your hand crush and ſqueeze the Malt as much as you can; the Maſh being luke-warm, give it to the Horse to drink; and if he eat of the Malt, let him take thereof at his Pleaſure. This is the beſt manner of making of an ordinary Maſh, or Horse-Caudle, for it is of that nature and quality; and to that purpoſe that a Caudle is adminiſtr'd to Man, is this given to a Horse; for you muſt understand, that in theſe contagious Diseases, nothing is more peſtilent then cold Water, and eſpecially when that Exercise cannot be uſed. The ruder Farriers and Horse-Grooms, do make the Maſh another way, putting the Malt to the Water at the firſt, and ſo boyling them both together; but this is unwholesome and naught,

sought, and that every good Mousie-wife can witness; for this long boyling over-scalds the Malt, and takes away the Strength and Sweetnes, and gives a harsh and unfavorable Taste, which is offensive to the Horse's Nature. If your Horse be coy, and refuse to take the Mash, as many are, partly for want of Use and Custom, and partly for Weakness of Stomach, then you shall strain the Water from the Malt exceeding hard, and so give him with a Horn to drink; then take the Grains which you have so strained, and put them in the Manger before the Horse, on which, whether he feed or no, it matters not; for if he but smell and snuffe his Nose upon them, it is sufficient; for the Fume thereof is wonderous wholesome for his Head. After you have given him the Mash, see that he be warmly cloathed, as namely a good woollen Body-cloth to come round about his Heart, a large Cloth or two to come over it, and to be wilpt round about, with soft, thick, and large Wilps; for the little, hard, and neat Wilps, though they are comely to the Eye, yet are they unwholesome for the Body, for Hardnes and Smallnes makes an Impression into the Horse's sides, causeth him to forbear to lye down, when Nature and Rest requireth it. The Horse being thus warm cloathed, you shall then cause one or two to rub all his four Legs from his Knees and Lantrels downwards, with very hard Wilps, and to rub them as hard as may be; and whilst his Limbs are thus in rubbing, take a coarse Rubber or two, made of new hardened temper Cloth, and warming one after another over a pan of Coals, with them rub the Horse exceedingly much in the Nape of his Neck, and the Pole, just betwixt his Ears, and on the Temples of his Head; for there is nothing that is more wholesome then these Frictions and Chafings, for they dissolve Humours, and revive all natural Heat, being a cheerful Numbleness to the Limbs, and purge the Head of gross cold, and rough Matter, cleansing and purifying the Brain, by which the Members and other Faculties are fortified, and the whole Body reduced back to its full Strength and Ability. As soon as you have ended this Friction of rubbing, you may then let the Horse take his Rest for two or three hours, and only leave a Lock or two of sweet Hay in his Rack,

and

and no more; for the least quantity of any thing is too much and soon cloyes a sick Horse.

An Excellent Perfume for inward Sickness, &c.

In the Evening come to your Horse again, and having rubbed all his Limbs and Head, as you did before, then perfume his Head in this manner. Take of the best and purest *Olibanum* an ounce, as much of *Benzoin* and *Rax*, and bruise them all together; I do not mean bruise them to small Powder, but only break them in small Lumps, and mix them well together, and so taking them up between your Fingers, you may not take up one Ingredient alone, but some of all; then take a Chafing-dish, if you have one, let it be after the manner of the perfuming Chafing-dishes, which are wide below where the Fire is, and narrow at the top, where the smoak avoideth; and in this Chafing-dish put well-kindled Wood-Coals, or small Charcoal, then take fine of the aforesaid Perfume, and lay it upon the Coals, but in any wise so that it may not flame, but smoak; then hold the Chafing-dish to the Nose of the Horse, and let the smoak go into his Nostrils, and thus perfume him well for the space of a quarter of an hour, or half an hour at the most. Now it may be the Horse may seem coy to receive this at the first, because it is strange to him; but do you continue the Action, and cherish him; for be you well assured, after he hath once received the Smell into his Head, he will be as greedy to have it, as you are willing to give it, for there is nothing that delighteth a Horse more, or more rejoiceth his Spirits than sweet favours, and odoriferous Smells, of which this Perfume is one of the chiefest; the Effects which this Perfume worketh is, that it purgeth the Brain of all filthy and corrupt Matter, (as you shall find by experience in the working) it dissolves tough Matter into Water, and brings it away in such abundance, that it is sometimes ready to extinguish the Fire as it falleth. It is the greatest comforter of the Brain that can be, and from thence sends such Cheerfulness to the Heart, that it rejoiceth the whole Body.

An excellent Receipt, with Directions for Ordering a Horse in extreme Sickness and danger of Life.

After your Horse hath been well Perfumed, as aforesaid, let him rest for a quarter of an hour, and then give him such Food as he will eat, either Bread, or Oats, how little he eats it skills not, for it is to be intended that his Stomach is now at the weakest. After he is fed, you shall toss up the Litter; for you must know, that he is to stand upon the Litter all night and the next day: Before to have him Fasting, and then the next Morning early, you shall take half an ounce of the Powder of *Diapente*, as the *Greeks* call it, because of the number Five: Take half an ounce of this Powder, and put it into a pint of the best *Muscadine*, and brew them well together in two Pots, tossing it to and fro, because otherwise the Myrrh will clotter and lump together; and after it is well brewed, give it the Horse in a Horn, then, if he have any small strength, mount his Back and walk him up and down in some warm or Sunny place for an Hour, then set him up in the Stable warm and well Littered, and tying his Back to the Bridle, let him so stand, and Fast for another hour, or more; then give him Meat, and so let him stand till betwixt Twelve and One of the Clock in the Afternoon; at which time rub him as formerly, then Perfume him, as was before said: Both them Works being finished, give him a sweet Mash, and so let him rest to the Evening, at which time, offer him Meat, but in a little quantity, as handful by handful, and let him rest till Eight of the Clock at Night, at which time again Perfume him, then give him Meat, and cloath him warm, make clean his Stable, and leave him to his Rest that Night.

A closing Method to perfise the Cure of dangerous Sickness in a Horse, pursuant to the former Rules.

The next day, being the third day, you shall do all things as you did the second day, already rehearsed; at first, you shall give him his Potion of *Diapente* and *sweet-Wine*, then

Air

Air him: At Noon give him his Mash: At the Evening and Night, his Perfume, with all observations that were before declared. The next day, which is the fourth day, there is no doubt (with the blessing of God) but you'll find alteration, and health approaching; you may know it by his Stomach, and by his more cheerful Countenance; as also by other outward Gestures: And finding that Health is coming, you may then forbear to give him any more Potions, only attend him with good Food, good Dressing, and moderate Exercise: Neither shall you give him any more Mashes; for tho' they be wholiome in the extremity of Sicknes, yet being any thing too much used, they will take away the Horse's Stomach, and bring him to a Loathing of other Meat; and therefore instead thereof, in the Morning when the Horse is well rubbed and dreft, take a pottle of fair Water, and heat it scalding hot, then put it into a Gallon or two of clear cold Water, that it may take away the extream coldnes thereof, and then, being scarcely luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink: You may, if you please, throw a handful of *Bras*, or a handful of *Wheat-seal* into the Water, for it is good. As soon as the Horse hath drank, back him, and ride him forth gently for an hour or two: At Noon, Perfume him: At Evening, Water him, as you did in the Morning, and ride him in the like manner: Feed him at usual Hours, as in the time of Health: And thus do for two or three days more; then finding his strength increasing, you may by degrees (according as the Season is) abate the Cloaths; you may also Water him abroad at some clear River, or Spring: Gallop him after his Watering; and draw every thing to the same custom as you did in his best Health.

An excellent Medicine for any violent Sicknes, if the Horse be at the point of Death.

If you have a Horse in this extremity and desperate case, then the first thing you do, shall be to open his Neck-Vein, and let him blood very well; then two hours after his bleeding, take two ounces of the Powder of *Disenterie*, and beat it in a Mortar with as much clarified *Life Honey* as will

will bring it to a substantial Tracle: When this Confec-
tion is made, take half an ounce thereof, or more, and dis-
solve it in a pint and an half of *Muscadine*, and so give it
to the Horse to drink with a Horn, and if he have so much
ability of Body, walk him up and down for half an hour,
either in some Sunny place, or close Barn, or empty House;
then set him up, and let him fast another hour: At Noon
give him, if you can get it, a Gallon, or near thereabouts,
of the first running of the strongest Ale, before it be put to
Barm, when it is clear, strong, and carrieth a Royal on
the top: But when this is not to be had, then give him a
sweet Mash, Perfume, Rub, Cloath, Diet, and Order him
in all respects as were shewed you in the former Cure.
And thus you shall do for three days together without
fail, and then no doubt but you shall see Health approach-
ing.

*How to Order your Horse after receiving the fore-going Medicine,
to perfect his Recovery.*

At the end of three days, forbear all sorts of Mashes of
both kinds, and follow all the Prescriptions before decla-
red. Now, if during the Cure, either through the violence
of Medicine, or the foulness of the Horse's Body, you shall
find any hard Pustles to rise up betwixt the Horse's Chaps
and at the root of the Tongue, then you shall first clip
away the Hair as close as may be; then you shall take a
Wax-Candle, and therewith burn the Swelling, till you
scarifie the Skin, then take a piece of Leather somewhat
larger than the Swelling, and having prick'd it all over with
the pint of your Knife, spread thereupon thick, your black
Shooe-makers *Wax* that is well season'd and new; then
warming it upon a few Coals, lay it upon the Swelling,
and remove it not, till either it fall off of it self, or else
the Sore breaks; then renew the Plaister, and with it heal
up the Sore. This Plaister for the cheapness and mean-
ness, will hardly gain credit with those that are Curious;
but I dare assure you, that there is not a more excellent or
soveraign Plaister which belongs to a Horse; for it ripen-
eth and breaketh any Impoftrumation whatsoever: It alwa-
y

geth any hard Swelling or Tumor, whether in the Joint^s or any other fleshy parts, and it healeth what it breaketh, or ripeneth; and with its heat, it dissolves all manner of Humours that are knit together, or occasion pain and fwelling.

To help a Horse that cannot Dung, after having been Sick.

There is another Accident which attendeth the Sicknes of Horses, and that is Costiveness, or Belly-binding, which maketh a Horse that he cannot Dung, or void his Ordure. This Accident, when at any time it happeneth, it shall be good for you first to take him, then anoint your Hand all over with *swet Butter*, or clarified *Hogs-grease*: Some use Oil of Bay; but it is too sharp and too hot, and many times (if the action be used too roughly, or unadvisedly) it breedeth an exulceration or sores in the Tail and inward parts: Therefore either take *swet Butter* or *Hogs-grease*, and your hand being all besmeared therewith, thrust it up into his Tuel until you feel his Ordure, then draw out as much thereof (if it be black) as conveniently you can; also, take a great Candle of three or four in the Pound at least, and cutting off an inch or two at the upper or smaller end, with your Hand anoint as before, thrusting the great end forward, put it up into his Tuel so far as you can get it; then suddenly drawing out of your Hand, and leaving the Candle behind you, clap down his Tail close to his Tuel, and drawing it up between his Legs, hold it with your Hand hardly and constantly for the space of an hour or more, in which time the Candle will dissolve in the Horse's Body, and so separate and break his Ordure, and upon the letting loose of your Hand, he will presently Dung. This you may do in every case of Extremity, but not otherwise: And believe it, you will find this the most excellent Suppository of all other; and there is no Glistier that can work with greater efficacy or more wholom-*er*.

Of the danger of Laxativeness in a Horse, and how to remedy it.

There is another Accident which attendeth the Sicknes of Horses, and this is quite contrary to that before rehearsed, and it is called Laxativeness, or Loosenesse of the Body, which is expressed by a vehement and violent Scowring: This, if at any time it shall happen, you shall at first note the violence thereof, and the continuance thereof. The violence is known by the thinnesse or sharpnesse, and the often and speedy voiding of the Excrements. The continuance is known by the unchangeableness of the Infirmity, and by the procelss and long continuance of time, contrary to all natural and wholesome custome; for you are to obserue, that a Horse may have a Scowring for a day, or a little more, and this is not unwholesome, but natural and good; and if after, it stay of it self, then it worketh no evil effect; but if it continue longer, and bring the Horse into an extraordinary weaknesse of Body, then seek to stop it in this manner: Take a quart of Milk, putting thereto a good spoonful or two of fine *Bear-flower*, and as much *Bale-Armniack* finely beaten to Powder, boyl altogether till the Milk thicken, and then being made luke-warm, give it the Horse with a Horn; and doing thus a Morning or two, no doubt but that it will Bind the Horse; which if it doth not, then you shall take a quart of *Red-wine*, and put thereunto a handful of the Herb call'd *Sheards Pars*, and half so much of *Tanner's Bark*, and boyl all very well together, till the Herb and the Bark be soft; then strain it, and put thereinto of the Powder of *Cinnamon*, and being made luke-warm, give it to the Horse to drink with a Horn; and this do a Morning, two or three, if need require.

The means to help and preserve Horses from inward Diseases.

There are Four wayes and means to keep Horses from inward Diseases, viz. *Purging, Sweating, letting of Blood, and Fruising*, whereof in Order. First, Of *Purging*; which

may be said to be two-fold, Outward, and inward: The time of purging or cleansing the Horse, must be presently after the taking of the Horse from Gras, into the Stable, which should be at or before the Feast of St. Bartholomew, by reason of the great moisture and cold that then happeneth, and to be taken up very gently, for fear of Over-heating of him, lest his Humours thereby should be dissolved by the Veins and Arteries, into every part of the Body. And that every Horse at such times are full of Humours, appeareth in the best Spirited Horses, if you then perceive their Actions, how heavy they perform them at such times. The manner of purging and clearing the outward parts of the Body, should be in this manner. First, shave his Ears, and a little place behind, for the Head-stall to lye flat and even; then take *Sap* and anoint his Head and Jaws therewith; and then take warm *Bucklie* and wash and cleanse the same in every part, so clean as is possible, from all Sweat or Scurf, and presently rub his Head and every part with clean Linnen Cloaths, and after with Woolen Cloaths very dry; then put thereon a double Hood or Biggen, made on purpose to keep all the parts of his Head very warm: If it be a fair warm day, in the Sun, in like manner wash, purge and cleanse all his Body, and every part thereof, especially his Main, Tail, and Cods: Then rub him and clear him very dry; cloath him and shuff him very warm, and give him plenty of sweet and clean Litter; then anoint all his Hoofs (having first washed them and made them dry) with this Ointment: Take of *Tarposine* and *Sheeps-fury*, half a pound of unwrought *Wax*; a quartern of *Allum*; of *Saltet Oil*, half a pint; of *Tar*, a quarter of a pint: Boyl them altogether until they are well incorporated; keep it in a Pot, and every day (his Feet being clean) anoint his Hoofs therewith; neither let him go to Gras (if he be a Horse of worth) above one Mouth in the Year.

F I N I S.

THE CONTENTS.

O F the Nature and Properties of Horses.	Page 1
The Means to make the Seed of the Horse perfect for Generation.	2
Observations for the better breeding of a Mare.	3
Of what Age the Horse or Mare ought to be when Bred and Bring forth.	ib.
To know whether a Mare hath Conceived, &c.	4
Of Tanning of Colts.	ib.
Of making of Colts to Amble from the time of their Foaling.	5
Of the Stable.	ib.
Of Shoeing of Horses.	7
How to know a Horse that is durable in a Journey, &c.	9
How to know a free and perfect spirited Horse.	10
Of the Shape of a Horse.	11
Of the Colours of Horses.	13
Of the Horses Marks.	14
How to know a horse that is bold by Nature.	ib.
How to make a white Scar or Spot in a Horse's Face, &c.	15
To keep your Well-bred Horse-claustre, &c. from Marks.	ib.
How to defend a Horse from Flies.	16
Observations in Etolling of Horses, and the like.	ib.
To fatten a lean Horse in a short time.	18
A certain way to know the Age of a Horse by his Teeth, &c.	ib.
Further general Rules necessary to be known by the Horseman and Farrier, from immemorial Experience.	20
Directions for Ordering a Horse designed for Exercise, &c.	19
Opinions as to Sallling and Bridling a Horse.	21
The best Method for Bucking a Horse.	22
The Compleat Horseman: Or true Art of Horsemanship, &c.	23
Of Curvelling.	25
Teaching not fit for such Horses as Nature hath not framed fit to be Taught.	29
ib.	
Of the Bridle, Saddle, and bringing the Horse to the Block; the Mounting, and seat of the Rider, &c.	36
Of Trotting in the Ring, and other Places, &c.	38

The C O N T E N T S.

<p><i>The proper Use of the Wand, Bit, and Spur, for the well Training a Horse.</i></p> <p><i>Rules and Directions for the Management of a Horse, &c.</i></p> <p><i>Of the Manag'd Horse, with further Instructions.</i></p> <p><i>Of Half-turnings, Doubles, Chambres, Marques, Courreis.</i></p> <p><i>Some principal things yet remaining to be known by such as would be Experts or Compleat Horsemen, &c.</i></p> <p><i>Of the Bound, Leap, and Terk.</i></p> <p><i>Of the Capriole and Corrente.</i></p> <p><i>Short infallible Rules to be Observ'd and Practis'd by every Horseman.</i></p> <p><i>Other ways and methods for the Management of a Horse, &c.</i></p> <p><i>The use of the Tramel,</i></p> <p><i>Times proper to alter the Tramel, and corrections to make.</i></p> <p><i>How to stop in a full career, Advance, &c.</i></p> <p><i>How to oblige Horses to Retire, and execute various Bits.</i></p> <p><i>Turnings, and strait Turns, &c.</i></p> <p><i>Observations on Andeling, Racking and Gait-spring.</i></p> <p><i>The Running Horse, or Racer, how to Manage, Feed, &c.</i></p> <p><i>The first Fortnight's Ordering the Running-horse, &c.</i></p> <p><i>Things proper to be observed in Horses, &c.</i></p> <p><i>Rules for the second Fortnight's Keeping.</i></p> <p><i>Directions to Order him after this.</i></p> <p><i>The third Fortnight how to order him.</i></p> <p><i>Cordial Baits for the third Fortnight.</i></p> <p><i>Rules for the fourth and last Fortnight.</i></p> <p><i>Stars, Snips and Blazers for the Beautifying a Horse, how to make them.</i></p> <p><i>Things to be observed when you put your Horse to Graft.</i></p> <p><i>The Drink to be given before Graft.</i></p> <p><i>How the Horse is to be used when taken from Graft.</i></p> <p><i>Other material Directions.</i></p> <p><i>Blood-letting, on what occasion it ought to be used.</i></p> <p><i>What season is best to let Blood in.</i></p> <p><i>Observations on a Horse, as to the Brain, Sinews, Veins, relating to Health, strength, &c.</i></p> <p><i>The Bones that frame a Horse's Body, their Number, and how they are placed.</i></p> <p><i>Of the four Humours in the Body of a Horse, &c.</i></p> <p><i>The Humours or Concoctions of a Horse's Body, &c.</i></p>	<p>31</p> <p>33</p> <p>37</p> <p>39</p> <p>43</p> <p>44</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>45</p> <p>46</p> <p>47</p> <p>48</p> <p>49</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>50</p> <p>51, 52</p> <p>53</p> <p>55</p> <p>56</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>58</p> <p>59</p> <p>60</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>62</p> <p>63</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>64</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>65</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>66</p> <p>ib.</p> <p>67</p> <p>68</p> <p>ib.</p>
--	---

The CONTENTS.

How to prepare a Horse to receive Medicines, if any Distemper has seized him.	70
What Purgations with least danger may be given to a Horse.	ib.
Approval Rules to be observed by such as either Travel or Exer- cise Horses.	ib.
Another excellent way to the like purpose.	73
The Order of Curing Horses that are Distressed: The Con- sider, the Signs, and the Cures thereof.	73
Of the Ague or Fever in Horses.	ibid.
Another of the same.	74
Of the Ague in the Head.	ibid.
Of the sudden Sickness of a Horse.	75
Of a Horse that cannot Piss.	ibid.
Of the Pains in the Head.	76
To bring H. to again.	ibid.
Of the Stone and Cholick in a Horse.	ibid.
Of killing the Fire, either in Burning or Sore.	ibid.
Of a Horse that stumbles, &c.	ibid.
Of the Colly.	77
Of the Farcin.	ibid.
Of the Fistula.	79
These Infirmities are Cured by this following Medicine; all broken bones, all Bones out of joints, &c.	80
Of Leprosie and universal Malignancy.	ibid.
Another of the same.	81
Of the running of the Fresh.	82
To make a Horse that he shall not neigh.	ibid.
To make a white mark on a Horse.	ibid.
To ripen an Inflammation.	ibid.
Of a Farcin, &c.	ibid.
Of sucking a Fistula or Wind-gall.	83
Of a Wrench in the Fetter-lock, &c.	ibid.
Of a Blister.	ibid.
Of a Wind gall that shall not grow again.	ibid.
Of Curing a sudden H.	ibid.
Of the dangerous Galling of a Horse.	ibid.
Removing a broken Hoof, &c.	84
Of freeing of the Guts.	ibid.
To make a Horse follow his Master.	ibid.
Of	

The C O N T E N T S.

Of Bones out of Joint.	ibid.
Of pulling out of Shoves or Thorns, &c.	85
Of a Strange Wart.	ibid.
Of the Sincers cut and bruised.	ibid.
Of the Curb.	ibid.
Another for the same.	ibid.
Of Wind-galls in Horses.	86
Of the Pipes or Cratches in Horses.	ibid
Of the Graveling of Horses.	ibid.
The Ring-bone in Horses.	87
Of the Crown Scab.	ibid.
All Injuries are Cured by the following Medicines, viz.	ibid.
Slints, Sprains, Curbs, Ringbones, &c.	ibid.
Of the Retreat or cliving the Foot, &c.	88
Of Surbaiting.	ibid.
Another.	ibid.
Instructions in giving of Fire, or using of Corrosives, which heal all sorts of Farcies, Cancers, Fistulas, &c.	ibid.
Of a Horse that is pricked in the Foot with a Nail, or otherwise.	89
Of the Quitterbone.	ibid.
Of the Huf-bound.	90
Of the Loosening of the Hoof.	91
Of the casting the Hoof.	ibid.
For Founring, Fretzgung, or any other Imperfection of the Feet, or Hufs of a Horse.	92
For hurts upon the Coronets of the Hufs, &c.	93
To help the Surbaiting or Sores of the Foot.	ibid.
Of the Dry Sprain.	ibid.
Another for the same.	94
Of the wet or blood Sprain.	95
All the Dismanders are cured by the Medicine following. All Watry Eyes. All Blood-shitten Eyes, &c.	ibid.
For a Wrench or Sprain in the Taffers.	ibid.
Of a Horse that is Hipped.	96
Of Stung, and Hurts in the Stifler.	97
Of Wounds.	ibid.
A Receipt for any extraordinary Collar Cough, &c.	ibid.
For any dangerous Bots or Maw-worms.	98 T

The C O N T E N T S.

<i>To heal, or dry up any old Ulcer or Cancerous Sore.</i>	100
<i>For any Sore-Eyes in Horses.</i>	ibid.
<i>For an old Strain or Lameness in the Joints &c.</i>	101
<i>Of a Black-filmed Strain, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For any desperate Strain in the Shoulder, or other hidden Parts, or any Fistula, Pale-Evil, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of a Flax Quærry.</i>	102
<i>For an Over-reach on the Heel.</i>	ibid.
<i>For an upper Taint or an Over-reach upon the Back, &c.</i>	103
<i>Of the Nether Joint.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Screw, or Scroop.</i>	ibid.
<i>All these Infirmities are Cured by this Medicine following:</i>	
<i>Fevers in general, the Pestilence, &c.</i>	104
<i>For the Malady.</i>	106
<i>Another of the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Spine.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another of the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>For Foundries.</i>	107
<i>For the Shoulder-pain.</i>	108
<i>For a Fractur Huf.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the blunting of the Huf.</i>	ibid.
<i>For a Pinch or a Gall in the Withers.</i>	ibid.
<i>A present Remedy for the Spavin.</i>	110
<i>For the Stangus.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the swelling of the Fore-legs.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another for the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another for the same.</i>	111
<i>All these Infirmities are Cured by this following Medicine:</i>	
<i>Inflammations in the Ears, Ulcers in the Nose, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For a Grief in the Shoulder, &c.</i>	112
<i>Of the Wringing of the Shoulder.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Splanting of the Shoulder.</i>	113
<i>A Remedy for the Spavins.</i>	114
<i>For the Colt-Evil.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Swelling of the Cals.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Mastering of the Yard.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Tetter.</i>	115
<i>How to remove the Wind-gall.</i>	ibid.
<i>An excellent and speedy help for the Glanders.</i>	ibid.
	49

The C O N T E N T S.

<i>An Excellent Remedy for the Hurt in the Eye.</i>	ibid.
<i>A rare Medicin for a sore Back, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>An excellent Cure for the Scab and the sore Crupper.</i>	116
<i>For the Foulness of the Tard.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the swelling of the Cods or Stones.</i>	ibid.
<i>For a boar Excreting from any Member of a Horse.</i>	ibid.
<i>To cure the running Fright, or any Inflammation of the Sore of the Foreskin &c.</i>	117
<i>For incording or Bursting.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Bitch in the Grains of a Horse.</i>	118
<i>All these Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine:</i>	
<i>All Head-ach; All Frenzies; the Lethargy, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For surfeiting with Provender.</i>	119
<i>For the Novel-Gall.</i>	120
<i>Another Remedy for the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another Remedy for the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Swelling of the Back.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Gout led in fould in the Legs, or other Parts &c.</i>	121
<i>How to keep a Horse in a Stable from Tyring.</i>	122
<i>Two sorts of Bals to cure a violent Cold, &c.</i>	123
<i>Another way how to fatten a Horse suddenly.</i>	124
<i>For the Head-ach.</i>	125
<i>For the Novel-gall.</i>	126
<i>Another Remedy for the same Sore.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another Cure for the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Worms.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Liver.</i>	127
<i>For C-splines, or Belly-ache.</i>	128
<i>All these Infirmities are Cured by the Wine only contained in this following Medicine: The Bloody Riffs, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Tetter.</i>	129
<i>For the Swelling and Faustring of the Body.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Colick.</i>	130
<i>Another Cure for the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another for the same.</i>	131
<i>For surfeiting with Provender.</i>	ibid.
<i>These Infirmities are cured by the following Medicines: All Convulsions of Sinners, all Cramps whatsoever &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Wens or Knobs in the Body.</i>	132
	<i>Another</i>

The CONTENTS.

<i>Another Cure for the same.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Another Remedy for the same.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the falling of the Crest.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Crack in the Neck.</i>	133
<i>To draw the Walrus Teeth.</i>	134
<i>For the swelling of the Gums.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Of the Rotts, or Corrugation in the Palate, &c.</i>	135
<i>For the Canker in the Mouth.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Heat in the Mouth.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Cancer in the Mouth.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Bubbs or Paps under the Tongue.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Hurt of the Tongue with a Bit.</i>	136
<i>For the Gogg in the Mouth.</i>	Ibid.
<i>These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following: Mucilage in the Mouth, Mucilage in the Tail, &c.</i>	Medicines
	Ibid.
<i>For the Burning at the Nose.</i>	137
<i>Another Remedy for the same.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Of the Vines.</i>	138
<i>Another Cure for the same.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Cancer in the Nose.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Another Cure for the same.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Cancer of the Eyes.</i>	139
<i>For the Impetuosity in the Ear.</i>	Ibid.
<i>These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following, all Light Galls, to open Sores, to dry up Humours.</i>	Medicines
	Ibid.
<i>Of the Pol. Evil.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For Impetuosity in the Ear.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Cancer in the Eye.</i>	141
<i>For the Itch in the Eye.</i>	Ibid.
<i>For the Lachrym. Eyes.</i>	142
<i>These Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine: all Wounds in general, all Sores, &c.</i>	Medicines
	Ibid.
<i>For the Staggers.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Another for the same.</i>	144
<i>A Sovereign Medicine called the Emperor of all Medicines concerning Hurts</i>	Medicines
	Ibid.
<i>A safe Purge to prevent Sickness.</i>	145
<i>For the Cramp, or Convulsion of the Sinews.</i>	Ibid.

The C O N T E N T S.

<i>How to order him after this, for the recovery of his Limbs, &c.</i>	146.
<i>For a Cold in the Head.</i>	Ibid.
<i>These Infirmities are Cured by the Medicine following. The Poll-Evil: The Soreness after Band-letting, &c.</i>	147
<i>For the Glassiers.</i>	Ibid.
<i>How to Order the Horse after this, &c.</i>	148
<i>The Mourning of the Cline, its Cause and Cure.</i>	149
<i>The manner of Ordering him after this.</i>	150
<i>The following things are most excellent to put into Horses Prownder, to preserve them from Distastes.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Broken Wind, the Cause.</i>	151
<i>For a Broken-wind, the Cure.</i>	152
<i>A most sovereign Drink to preserve a Horse's Lungs and Liver clear, &c.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Of the Signs of the inward Sicknesses of Horses.</i>	153
<i>Observations to be taken from the Horse's Feeling and Dung, as to the state of his Body, &c.</i>	153
<i>Things to be inferred from the before going Observations.</i>	156
<i>Some other choice Observations, for preventing of all inward Sicknesses.</i>	157
<i>To refine the Wool, &c.</i>	158
<i>Of Bleeding in any Heart-Sickness, &c.</i>	Ibid.
<i>How to prepare your Horse after Bleeding, &c.</i>	159
<i>An Excellent Perfume for inward Sickness, &c.</i>	162
<i>An Excellent Receipt, with Directions for Ordering a Horse in extreme Sickness, and danger of Life.</i>	164
<i>A choice Method to perfect the Cure of dangerous Sickness in a Horse, pursuant to the former Rules.</i>	Ibid.
<i>An excellent Medicine for any violent Sickness, &c.</i>	165
<i>How to Order your Horse after receiving the first-giving Medicine, to perfect his Recovery.</i>	165
<i>To help the Horse that cannot Dung, &c.</i>	166
<i>Of the manner of Laxative-sets in a Horse, and how to remedy it.</i>	167
<i>The means to help and prevent Horses from inward Distastes.</i>	Ibid.

Here is now in the Press, and will speedily be Published, *The Husband-man, Farmer and Grazier's Compleat Instructor*, in Breeding, Feeding, Buying and Selling Cattle; with approved Remedies for all Diseases and Grievances incident to them, viz. Bulls, Cows, Calves, Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, and all other Domestic Cattle. Printed for *Henry Nelme*, at the *Leg and Star in Cernhil*.

Sets of Cuts for Bibles, in *Folio*, *Quarto*, and *Octavo*, curiously Engraven on Copper, containing near Two hundred Plates, are now Sold to Bookellers at a cheaper Price than usual, viz. The *Folio*, at 9*s.* The *Quarto*, at 7*s. 6*d.** And the *Octavo's*, 3*s. 6*d.** Also various Bibles of the several Volumes, fit for the said Cuts to Bind with: By *Henry Nelme*, at the *Leg and Star in Cernhil*:

Where Gentlemen, or others, may be furnished with the said Bibles ready Bound, either with, or without Cuts: Also, *Common Prayers*, with the best Cuts Extant.

At the said Place, may Country Chapmen be furnished with all sorts of *Bibles*, *Common-Prayer Books*, *Testaments*, *Psalms*, *Primers*, *Hymnbooks*; or other Saleable Chapmen's Books.

BOOKS newly Published, and Sold by *Henry Nelme*, at the *Leg and Star in Cernhil*.

SION in Distress: Or the Groans of the Protestant Church for many Ages past, under the cruel Tyranny of Popish Persecution.

K.

and

and Merciless Torments. As also the Marks of the Anti christian Romish Church; the Arraignment of the Scarlet Whore, and the Complaints of the Persecuted Nations against her, from the Primitive Times down to the Year 1680; with her final Doom and Sentence. To which is newly added, Sis's Relief, and joyful Triumph over all her Enemies, under the Reign of His Sacred Majesty, K. William III. *Price Bound, 1 s.*

The New Help to Discourse: Or, Wit and Mirth, intermixt with more Serious Matters, Together with the Country-man's Guide; containing Directions for the true Knowledge of several Matters concerning Astronomie and Husbandry, in a more plain and easie Method than any yet Extant, By W. W. Gent. The Fourth Edition, with many new Additions. *Price Bound, 1 s.*

An Essay on the Agreeableness of Christian Faith with Natural Reason. By way of Dialogue. Written in Latin by Sebastian Cogito, with his Apology for himself. Englished by C. B. Price Bound, 1 s.

Hugo Grotius's Second Part of the Truth of Christian Religion: Or, the Confutation of Paganism, Judaism, and Mahometism. Translated by C. B. a Divine of the Church of England. Exemplified by Memorials of the truly Pious and Christian Lives of Alderman Whistler, Bishop Willyes, Bishop Reynolds, Alderman Adams. By the same Author. *Price Bound, 1 s.*

An Impartial History of the Plots and Conspiracies against the Life of his Sacred Majesty, King

King William the Third ; in order to the Subversion of the Established Government, our Religion, Laws, and Liberties, &c. With Remarks on God's wonderful Providence in defeating their wicked Purposes, as well in the intended Invasion, as Assassination. Also a satisfactory Account of the Tryals of the Conspirators ; their Confessions at the Place of Execution, and what in their Papers there delivered, relates to Publick Concern. Being a Compendium of the whole Transaction, for the Information of the Present and Future Ages. Price Bound, 1*l.*

Familiar Letters on several Occasions : Written by Mr. Dryden, Mr. Wycherly, Mr. Congreve, Mr. —— and Mr. Dennis. With some Passionate Love Letters ; and a Translation of *Vivere's Letters*, by Mr. Dryden, and Mr. Dennis. Price Bound, 2*s.* 6*d.*

Aleander and Philocrates : Or, the Pleasures and Disquietudes of Marriage. A Novel. Price Bound, 1*l.*

Love in Distress : Or, the lucky Discovery. A Novel. Written by the Honourable, the Lady —— Price Bound, 1*l.*

The Child's Instructor : Leading to true Spelling and Reading English. With useful Counsel and weighty Arguments, persuading them to remember their Creator in the days of their Youth. Also a Confession of Faith, and Catechism for Younger People. By B. Keck. Price Bound, 4*d.*

The Sinners Tears, in Meditations and Prayers. By T. Fatiplast. Price Bound, 1*s.* A

A Dictionary of hard English Words, with their Interpretation. By *E. Coler.* Price bound, 15.6d.

Christ's famous Titles, and a Believer's Golden Chain, handled in divers Sermons; together with his Cabinet of jewels, or, a glimpse of Sion's Glory: Also, Christ's Voice to London, The great Day of God's Wrath, The Necessity of Watching and Praying, with a Treatise of Death. By *W. Dyer.* Price Bound, 15.

Supplications of Saints; a Book of Prayers and Praisings, in four parts. By *T. Scott.* Price bound, 15.

The Secretary in Fashion: Or, Instructions for writing Letters. Price Bound, 2s.

The newest, plainest, and the shortest Short-hand, containing 1. A brief Account of all the Short-hands already Extant; with their Alphabets and fundamental Rules. 2. A plain and easie Method for Beginners, less burthenome to the Memory than any other. 3. A new Invention for contracting words, with special Rules for contracting Sentences, and other ingenious Fancies, both pleasant and profitable unto all, let their Character be whosever or what it will. By *E. Coler.* Price Bound, 15.

The manner of Raising, Ordering, and improving Forest and Fruit Trees: Also how to Plant, and keep Woods, Walks, Avenues, Lawns, Hedges, &c. With several Figures in Copper-plates, proper for the same. Also Rules and Tables shewing how the ingenious Planter may measure Superficial Figures, with Rules how to divide Woods or Land, and how to treasure Timber and other Solid Bodies, either by Arithmetick or Geometry, shewing the use of that most Excellent Line, the *Line of Numbers*, by several New Examples; with many other Rules useful for most Men. By *Major Cook*, Gardiner to that great Encourager of Planting, the Right Honourable, the Earl of Essex. Whereunto is now added, that ingenious Treatise of Mr. *Gabriel Piques*, w^t. A Discovery of Subterranean Treasures. Price Bound 15.

